MARITIME AND PORT AUTHORITY OF SINGAPORE
SHIPPING CIRCULAR
NO. 21 OF 2015

MPA Shipping Division
460 Alexandra Road
21st Storey PSA Building
Singapore 119963
Fax: 6375 6231
http://www.mpa.gov.sg

24 August 2015

Applicable to: Ship owners, managers, operators, masters, crew members, surveyors, shipyards and the shipping community.

RESOLUTIONS ADOPTED BY THE 68TH SESSION OF THE MARITIME ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE (MEPC 68) OF IMO

1. This circular informs the shipping community on the outcome, including the resolutions adopted/approved by the 68th session of the Marine Environment Protection Committee (MEPC 68) of IMO, and urges the community to prepare for the implementation of these resolutions.

2. The details of the resolutions can be found in the MEPC 68 final report which is available from the MPA website.

3. The mandatory resolutions include the following:

a. Resolution MEPC.264(68) – International Code for Ships operating in Polar Waters (Polar Code);

The resolution adopts the Polar Code to provide a mandatory framework for ships operating in polar waters to ensure safe ship operation and protection of the polar environment.

The Polar Code will enter into force on 1 January 2017, and the environment-related provisions of the Code will be implemented under the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Oil) Regulations, Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk) Regulations, Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Sewage) Regulations and Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Garbage) Regulations.

b. Resolution MEPC.265(68) – Amendments to Annexes I, II, IV and V of MARPOL 73/78 (Making the use of the environment-related provisions of the Polar Code mandatory);

The resolution amends MARPOL Annexes I, II, IV and V in order to make the environment-related provisions of the Polar Code mandatory.

The amendments to MARPOL Annexes I, II, IV and V will be given effect through amendments to the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Oil) Regulations, Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk) Regulations, Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Sewage) Regulations and Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Garbage) Regulations respectively and will enter into force on 1 January 2017.

c. Resolution MEPC.266(68) – Amendments to Annex I of MARPOL 73/78 (Amendments to regulation 12 of MARPOL Annex I).

The resolution amends regulation 12 of MARPOL Annex I to update the regulation and to expand on the requirements for discharge connections and piping to ensure the proper disposal of oil residues.

The amendments will enter into force on 1 January 2017, and will be given effect through amendments to the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea (Oil) Regulations.

4. MEPC 68 also adopted the following resolutions:

a. Resolution MEPC.259(68) – 2015 Guidelines for Exhaust Gas Cleaning Systems (supersedes MEPC.184(59));

The guidelines specify the requirements for testing, survey certification and verification of exhaust gas cleaning systems to ensure they provide effective equivalence, as an alternative compliance method, to the fuel sulphur standards in regulation 14 of MARPOL Annex VI.

b. Resolution MEPC.260(68) – Amendments to the 2011 Guidelines addressing additional aspects to the NOx Technical Code 2008 with regard to particular requirements related to marine diesel engines fitted with selective catalytic reduction (SCR) systems (Resolution MEPC.198(62));

The resolution provides amendments to the guidelines to require the calculation of gaseous emissions for the test procedures of both scheme A and scheme B in the certification of engines fitted with SCR.

c. Resolution MEPC.261(68) – Amendments to the 2014 Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) (Resolution MEPC.254(67));

The resolution provides amendments to the survey and certification guidelines for EEDI by updating the ITTC Recommended Procedure to the 2014 edition and the ISO 15016 standard to the 2015 edition for final verification of attained EEDI at sea trial.

The consolidated text of the guidelines is disseminated under circular MEPC.1/Circ.855.

d. Resolution MEPC.262(68) – Amendments to the 2013 Interim Guidelines for determining minimum propulsion power to maintain the manoeuvrability of ships in adverse conditions (Resolution MEPC.232(65)), as amended by Resolution MEPC.255(67);

The resolution provides amendments to the level 1 minimum power lines assessment for bulk carriers and tankers.

The consolidated text of the guidelines is disseminated under circular MEPC.1/Circ.850/Rev.1.

e. Resolution MEPC.263(68) – Amendments to the 2014 Guidelines on the method of calculation of the Attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships (Resolution MEPC.245(66));

The amendments addressed an inconsistency in paragraph 2.6 of the guidelines to clarify the applicability of V_{ref} to LNG carriers.

f. Resolution MEPC.267(68) – Amendments to the Revised Guidelines for the identification and designation of Particularly Sensitive Sea Areas (Resolution A.982(24));

The resolution provides consequential amendments to the Revised PSSA guidelines following the adoption of the 2013 Guidelines for the designation of Special Areas under MARPOL that included the possibility of establishing Special Areas for prevention of sewage pollution from passenger ships.

g. Resolution MEPC.268(68) – Designation of the south-west Coral Sea as an extension of the Great Barrier Reef and Torres Strait Particularly Sensitive Sea Area;

The Great Barrier Reef and Torres Strait PSSA is extended to include the south-west part of the Coral Sea and the APMs will be applicable from 1 January 2016 following adoption by MSC 95.

h. Resolution MEPC.269(68) – 2015 Guidelines for the development of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials (supersedes MEPC.197(62)).

The guidelines provide recommendations for developing the IHM to assist relevant stakeholders for compliance with the requirements of the Ship Recycling Convention.

5. In addition to the adoption of resolutions, the following Unified Interpretation (UI) of the IBC Code was also approved:

a. MSC-MEPC.5/Circ.10 – Unified Interpretation of paragraph 15.13.5 of the IBC Code for products requiring oxygen-dependent inhibitors.

The UI addresses the condition when a product containing oxygen-dependent inhibitor is carried on a ship for which inerting is required following the entry into force of the amendments to the IBC Code on 1 January 2016.

6. The Unified Interpretation (UI) listed in paragraph 5 is acceptable to MPA and should be applied from 1 January 2016.

7 The IMO has also disseminated IMO Circular Letter No. 3551, which consolidates draft amendments to MARPOL and the NOx Technical Code 2008. The draft amendments are expected to be adopted at MEPC 69 (April 2016). The

shipping community is urged to consider the draft amendments and invited to provide comments and feedback as necessary.

8 The shipping community is urged to take early action to comply with the requirements on or before the date of entry into force of the amendments/resolutions.

9 Any queries relating to this circular should be directed to Mr. Princet Ang at telephone: 6375-6259 or email: princet_ang@mpa.gov.sg.

TAN SUAN JOW
DIRECTOR OF MARINE
MARITIME AND PORT AUTHORITY OF SINGAPORE

ANNEX 10

RESOLUTION MEPC.264(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

INTERNATIONAL CODE FOR SHIPS OPERATING IN POLAR WATERS (POLAR CODE)

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECOGNIZING the need to provide a mandatory framework for ships operating in polar waters due to the additional demands for the protection of the marine environment, which go beyond the existing requirements contained in the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto as amended by the 1997 Protocol (MARPOL) and other relevant binding IMO instruments,

NOTING resolution MEPC.265(68), by which it adopted, inter alia, amendments to MARPOL Annexes I, II, IV and V to make use of the environment-related provisions of the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters (Polar Code) mandatory,

NOTING ALSO that the Maritime Safety Committee, at its ninety-fourth session, adopted, by resolution MSC.385(94), the Introduction, as it relates to safety, and parts I-A and I-B of the Polar Code and, by resolution MSC.386(94), amendments to the 1974 SOLAS Convention to make use of the safety-related provisions of the Polar Code mandatory,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, the draft International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters,

1 ADOPTS the environment-related provisions of the Introduction, and the whole of parts II-A and II-B of the Polar Code, the text of which is set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 AGREES that amendments to the Introduction of the Polar Code that address both safety and environmental protection shall be adopted in consultation with the Maritime Safety Committee;

3 INVITES Parties to note that the Polar Code will take effect on 1 January 2017 upon entry into force of the associated amendments to MARPOL Annexes I, II, IV and V;

4 INVITES ALSO Parties to consider the voluntary application of the Polar Code, as far as practicable, to ships not covered by the Polar Code and operating in polar waters;

5 REQUESTS the Secretary-General, for the purposes of article 16(2)(e) of MARPOL, to transmit certified copies of the present resolution and the text of the Polar Code, contained in the annex, to all Parties to MARPOL;

6 REQUESTS ALSO the Secretary-General to transmit copies of the present resolution and the text of the Polar Code contained in the annex to Members of the Organization which are not Parties to MARPOL;

7 REQUESTS FURTHER the Secretary-General to prepare a consolidated certified text of the Polar Code.

ANNEX

INTERNATIONAL CODE FOR SHIPS OPERATING IN POLAR WATERS (POLAR CODE)

Contents

PREAMBLE 5
INTRODUCTION 5
1 Goal 5
2 Definitions 5
3 Sources of hazards 6
4 Structure of the Code 7
5 Figures illustrating the Antarctic area and Arctic waters 8
PART I-A 10
SAFETY MEASURES 10
CHAPTER 1 – GENERAL 10
1.1 Structure of this part 10
1.2 Definitions 10
1.3 Certificate and survey 11
1.4 Performance standards 12
1.5 Operational assessment 12
CHAPTER 2 – POLAR WATER OPERATIONAL MANUAL (PWOM) 12
2.1 Goal 12
2.2 Functional requirements 12
2.3 Regulations 13
CHAPTER 3 – SHIP STRUCTURE 14
3.1 Goal 14
3.2 Functional requirements 14
3.3 Regulations 14
CHAPTER 4 –SUBDIVISION AND STABILITY 15
4.1 Goal 15
4.2 Functional requirements 15
4.3 Regulations 15
CHAPTER 5 – WATERTIGHT AND WEATHERTIGHT INTEGRITY 16
5.1 Goal 16
5.2 Functional requirements 16
5.3 Regulations 16
CHAPTER 6 – MACHINERY INSTALLATIONS 17
6.1 Goal 17
6.2 Functional requirements 17
6.3 Regulations 17
CHAPTER 7 – FIRE SAFETY/PROTECTION 19
7.1 Goal 19
7.2 Functional requirements 19
7.3 Regulations 19
CHAPTER 8 – LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCES AND ARRANGEMENTS 20
8.1 Goal 20
8.2 Functional requirements 20
8.3 Regulations 21
CHAPTER 9 – SAFETY OF NAVIGATION 23
9.1 Goal 23
9.2 Functional requirements 23
9.3 Regulations 23
CHAPTER 10 – COMMUNICATION 24
10.1 Goal 24
10.2 Functional requirements 25
10.3 Regulations 25

CHAPTER 11 – VOYAGE PLANNING 26
11.1 Goal 26
11.2 Functional requirement 26
11.3 Requirements 26
CHAPTER 12 –MANNING AND TRAINING 27
12.1 Goal 27
12.2 Functional requirements 27
12.3 Regulations 27
PART I-B 29
ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE REGARDING THE PROVISIONS OF THE INTRODUCTION AND PART I-A 29
1 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO SECTION 2 (DEFINITIONS) OF THE INTRODUCTION 29
2 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 1 (GENERAL) 30
3 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 2 (POLAR WATER OPERATIONAL MANUAL (PWOM)) 31
3.1 Recommendation on the content of the Polar Water Operational Manual 31
3.2 Guidance on navigation with icebreaker assistance 31
3.3 Guidance on the development of contingency plans 32
4 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 3 (SHIP STRUCTURE) 32
5 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 4 (SUBDIVISION AND STABILITY) 33
6 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 5 (WATERTIGHT AND WEATHERTIGHT INTEGRITY) 33
7 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 6 (MACHINERY INSTALLATIONS) 34
8 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 7 (FIRE SAFETY/PROTECTION) 34
9 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 8 (LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCES AND ARRANGEMENTS) 34
9.1 Sample personal survival equipment 34
9.2 Sample group survival equipment 34
10 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 9 (SAFETY OF NAVIGATION) 35
11 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 10 (COMMUNICATION) 36
12 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 11 (VOYAGE PLANNING) 37
13 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 12 (MANNING AND TRAINING) 38
PART II-A 38
POLLUTION PREVENTION MEASURES 38
CHAPTER 1 38
PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY OIL 38
1.1 Operational requirements 38
1.2 Structural requirements 38
CHAPTER 2 39
CONTROL OF POLLUTION BY NOXIOUS LIQUID SUBSTANCES IN BULK 39
2.1 Operational requirements 39
CHAPTER 3 39
PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY HARMFUL SUBSTANCES CARRIED BY SEA IN PACKAGED FORM 39
CHAPTER 4 39
PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY SEWAGE FROM SHIPS 39
4.1 Definitions 39
4.2 Operational requirements 39
CHAPTER 5 40
PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY GARBAGE FROM SHIPS 40
5.1 Definitions 40
5.2 Operational requirements 40
PART II-B 42
ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO PART II-A ..... `42
1 Additional guidance to chapter 1 42
2 Additional guidance to chapter 2 42
3 Additional guidance to chapter 5 42
4 Additional guidance under other environmental Conventions and guidelines 42

PREAMBLE

1 The International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters has been developed to supplement existing IMO instruments in order to increase the safety of ships' operation and mitigate the impact on the people and environment in the remote, vulnerable and potentially harsh polar waters.

2 The Code acknowledges that polar water operation may impose additional demands on ships, their systems and operation beyond the existing requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto as amended by the 1997 Protocol, and other relevant binding IMO instruments.

3 The Code acknowledges that the polar waters impose additional navigational demands beyond those normally encountered. In many areas, the chart coverage may not currently be adequate for coastal navigation. It is recognized even existing charts may be subject to unsurveyed and uncharted shoals.

4 The Code also acknowledges that coastal communities in the Arctic could be, and that polar ecosystems are, vulnerable to human activities, such as ship operation.

5 The relationship between the additional safety measures and the protection of the environment is acknowledged as any safety measure taken to reduce the probability of an accident, will largely benefit the environment.

6 While Arctic and Antarctic waters have similarities, there are also significant differences. Hence, although the Code is intended to apply as a whole to both Arctic and Antarctic, the legal and geographical differences between the two areas have been taken into account.

7 The key principles for developing the Polar Code have been to use a risk-based approach in determining scope and to adopt a holistic approach in reducing identified risks.

INTRODUCTION

1 Goal

The goal of this Code is to provide for safe ship operation and the protection of the polar environment by addressing risks present in polar waters and not adequately mitigated by other instruments of the Organization.

2 Definitions

For the purpose of this Code, the terms used have the meanings defined in the following paragraphs. Terms used in part I-A, but not defined in this section shall have the same meaning as defined in SOLAS. Terms used in part II-A, but not defined in this section shall have the same meaning as defined in article 2 of MARPOL and the relevant MARPOL Annexes.

2.1 *Category A ship* means a ship designed for operation in polar waters in at least medium first-year ice, which may include old ice inclusions.

2.2 *Category B ship* means a ship not included in category A, designed for operation in polar waters in at least thin first-year ice, which may include old ice inclusions.

2.3 *Category C ship* means a ship designed to operate in open water or in ice conditions less severe than those included in categories A and B.

2.4 *First-year ice* means sea ice of not more than one winter growth developing from young ice with thickness from 0.3 m to 2.0 m[1].

2.5 *Ice free waters* means no ice present. If ice of any kind is present this term shall not be used[1].

2.6 *Ice of land origin* means ice formed on land or in an ice shelf, found floating in water[1].

2.7 *MARPOL* means the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto as amended by the 1997 Protocol.

2.8 *Medium first-year ice* means first-year ice of 70 cm to 120 cm thickness[1].

2.9 *Old ice* means sea ice which has survived at least one summer's melt; typical thickness up to 3 m or more. It is subdivided into residual first-year ice, second-year ice and multi-year ice[1].

2.10 *Open water* means a large area of freely navigable water in which sea ice is present in concentrations less than 1/10. No ice of land origin is present[1].

2.11 *Organization* means the International Maritime Organization.

2.12 *Sea ice* means any form of ice found at sea which has originated from the freezing of sea water[1].

2.13 *SOLAS* means the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended.

2.14 *STCW Convention* means the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978, as amended.

2.15 *Thin first-year ice* means first-year ice 30 cm to 70 cm thick.

3 Sources of hazards

3.1 The Polar Code considers hazards which may lead to elevated levels of risk due to increased probability of occurrence, more severe consequences, or both:

.1 Ice, as it may affect hull structure, stability characteristics, machinery systems, navigation, the outdoor working environment, maintenance and emergency preparedness tasks and malfunction of safety equipment and systems;

.2 experiencing topside icing, with potential reduction of stability and equipment functionality;

[1] Refer to the WMO Sea Ice Nomenclature.

.3 low temperature, as it affects the working environment and human performance, maintenance and emergency preparedness tasks, material properties and equipment efficiency, survival time and performance of safety equipment and systems;

.4 extended periods of darkness or daylight as it may affect navigation and human performance;

.5 high latitude, as it affects navigation systems, communication systems and the quality of ice imagery information;

.6 remoteness and possible lack of accurate and complete hydrographic data and information, reduced availability of navigational aids and seamarks with increased potential for groundings compounded by remoteness, limited readily deployable SAR facilities, delays in emergency response and limited communications capability, with the potential to affect incident response;

.7 potential lack of ship crew experience in polar operations, with potential for human error;

.8 potential lack of suitable emergency response equipment, with the potential for limiting the effectiveness of mitigation measures;

.9 rapidly changing and severe weather conditions, with the potential for escalation of incidents; and

.10 the environment with respect to sensitivity to harmful substances and other environmental impacts and its need for longer restoration.

3.2 The risk level within polar waters may differ depending on the geographical location, time of the year with respect to daylight, ice-coverage, etc. Thus, the mitigating measures required to address the above specific hazards may vary within polar waters and may be different in Arctic and Antarctic waters.

4 Structure of the Code

This Code consists of Introduction, parts I and II. The Introduction contains mandatory provisions applicable to both parts I and II. Part I is subdivided into part I-A, which contains mandatory provisions on safety measures, and part I-B containing recommendations on safety. Part II is subdivided into part II-A, which contains mandatory provisions on pollution prevention, and part II-B containing recommendations on pollution prevention.

Figures illustrating the Antarctic area and Arctic waters, as defined in SOLAS regulations XIV/1.2 and XIV/1.3, respectively, and MARPOL Annex I, regulations 1.11.7 and 46.2; Annex II, regulations 13.8.1 and 21.2; Annex IV, regulations 17.2 and 17.3; and Annex V, regulations 1.14.7 and 13.2

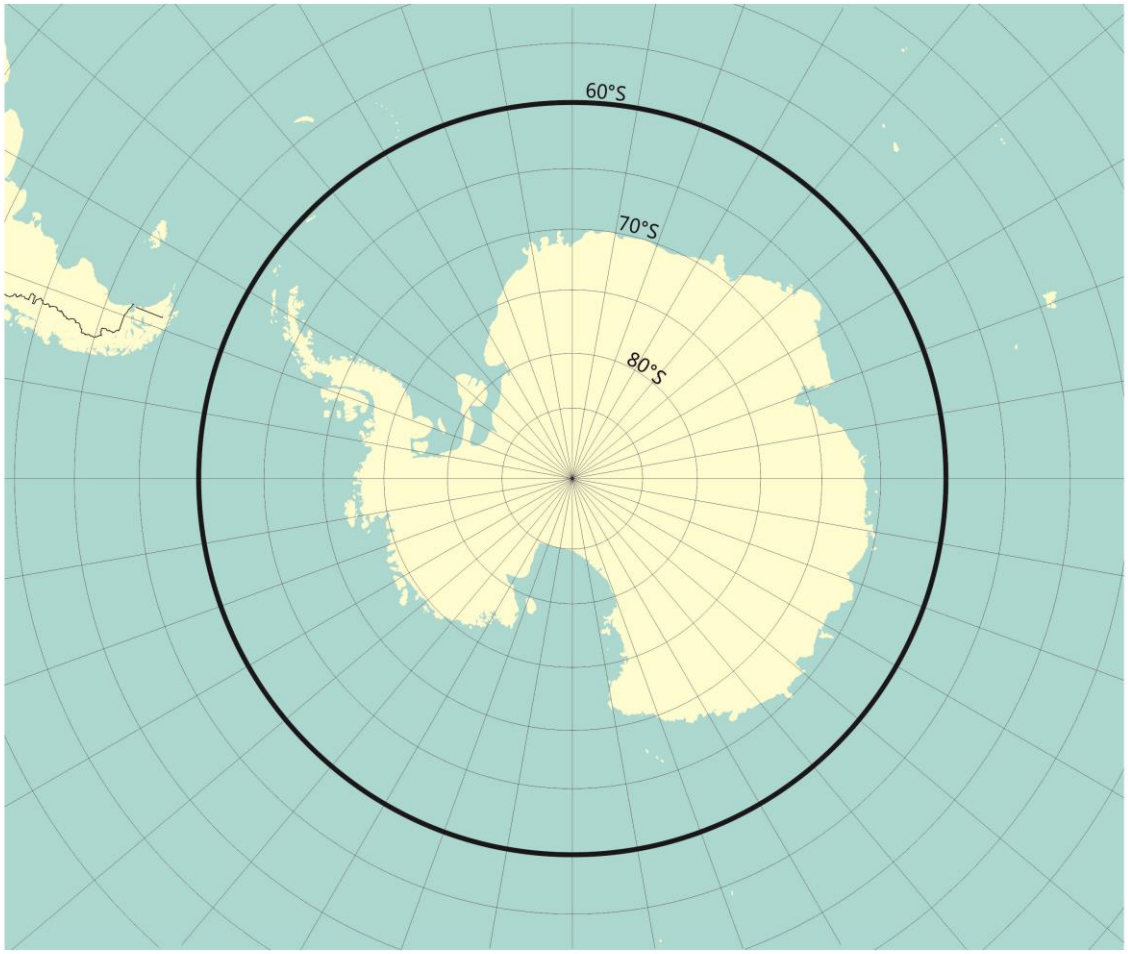


Figure 1 – Maximum extent of Antarctic area application[2]

[2] It should be noted that this figure is for illustrative purposes only.

Figure 2 – Maximum extent of Arctic waters application[3]

[3] It should be noted that this figure is for illustrative purposes only.

PART I-A

SAFETY MEASURES

CHAPTER 1 – GENERAL

1.1 Structure of this part

Each chapter in this part consists of the overall goal of the chapter, functional requirements to fulfil the goal, and regulations. A ship shall be considered to meet a functional requirement set out in this part when either:

.1 the ship's design and arrangements comply with all the regulations associated with that functional requirement; or

.2 part(s) or all of the ship's relevant design and arrangements have been reviewed and approved in accordance with regulation 4 of SOLAS chapter XIV, and any remaining parts of the ship comply with the relevant regulations.

1.2 Definitions

In addition to the definitions included in the relevant SOLAS chapters and the introduction of this Code, the following definitions are applicable to this part.

1.2.1 *Bergy waters* mean an area of freely navigable water in which ice of land origin is present in concentrations less than 1/10. There may be *sea ice* present, although the total concentration of all ice shall not exceed 1/10.

1.2.2 *Escort* means any ship with superior ice capability in transit with another ship.

1.2.3 *Escorted operation* means any operation in which a ship's movement is facilitated through the intervention of an escort.

1.2.4 *Habitable environment* means a ventilated environment that will protect against hypothermia.

1.2.5 *Icebreaker* means any ship whose operational profile may include escort or ice management functions, whose powering and dimensions allow it to undertake aggressive operations in ice-covered waters.

1.2.6 *Ice Class* means the notation assigned to the ship by the Administration or by an organization recognized by the Administration showing that the ship has been designed for navigation in sea-ice conditions.

1.2.7 *Maximum expected time of rescue* means the time adopted for the design of equipment and system that provide survival support. It shall never be less than 5 days.

1.2.8 *Machinery Installations* means equipment and machinery and its associated piping and cabling, which is necessary for the safe operation of the ship.

1.2.9 *Mean Daily Low Temperature* (MDLT) means the mean value of the daily low temperature for each day of the year over a minimum 10 year period. A data set acceptable to the Administration may be used if 10 years of data is not available[4].

1.2.10 *Polar Class (PC)* means the ice class assigned to the ship by the Administration or by an organization recognized by the Administration based upon IACS Unified Requirements.

1.2.11 *Polar Service Temperature (PST) means* a temperature specified for a ship which is intended to operate in low air temperature, which shall be set at least 10^0C below the lowest MDLT for the intended area and season of operation in polar waters.

1.2.12 *Ship intended to operate in low air temperature* means a ship which is intended to undertake voyages to or through areas where the lowest Mean Daily Low Temperature (MDLT) is below -10^0C.

1.2.13 *Tankers* mean oil tankers as defined in SOLAS regulation II-1/2.22, chemical tankers as defined in SOLAS regulation II-1/3.19 and gas carriers as defined in SOLAS regulation VII/11.2.

1.2.14 *Upper ice waterline* means the waterline defined by the maximum draughts forward and aft for operation in ice.

1.3 Certificate and survey

1.3.1 Every ship to which this Code applies shall have on board a valid Polar Ship Certificate.

1.3.2 Except as provided for in paragraph 1.3.3, the Polar Ship Certificate shall be issued after an initial or renewal survey to a ship which complies with the relevant requirements of this Code.

1.3.3 For category C cargo ships, if the result of the assessment in paragraph 1.5 is that no additional equipment or structural modification is required to comply with the Polar Code, the Polar Ship Certificate may be issued based upon documented verification that the ship complies with all relevant requirements of the Polar Code. In this case, for continued validity of the certificate, an onboard survey should be undertaken at the next scheduled survey.

1.3.4 The certificate referred to in this regulation shall be issued either by the Administration or by any person or organization recognized by it in accordance with SOLAS regulation XI-1/1. In every case, that Administration assumes full responsibility for the certificate.

1.3.5 The Polar Ship Certificate shall be drawn up in the form corresponding to the model given in appendix 1 to this Code. If the language used is neither English, nor French nor Spanish, the text shall include a translation into one of these languages.

1.3.6 Polar Ship Certificate validity, survey dates and endorsements shall be harmonized with the relevant SOLAS certificates in accordance with the provisions of regulation I/14 of the SOLAS Convention. The certificate shall include a supplement recording equipment required by the Code.

[4] Refer also to additional guidance in part I-B.

1.3.7 Where applicable, the certificate shall reference a methodology to assess operational capabilities and limitations in ice to the satisfaction of the Administration, taking into account the guidelines developed by the Organization[5].

1.4 Performance standards

1.4.1 Unless expressly provided otherwise, ship systems and equipment addressed in this Code shall satisfy at least the same performance standards referred to in SOLAS.

1.4 2 For ships operating in low air temperature, a polar service temperature (PST) shall be specified and shall be at least 10^0C below the lowest MDLT for the intended area and season of operation in polar waters. Systems and equipment required by this Code shall be fully functional at the polar service temperature.

1.4.3 For ships operating in low air temperature, survival systems and equipment shall be fully operational at the polar service temperature during the maximum expected rescue time.

1.5 Operational assessment

In order to establish procedures or operational limitations, an assessment of the ship and its equipment shall be carried out, taking into consideration the following:

.1 the anticipated range of operating and environmental conditions, such as:

.1 operation in low air temperature;

.2 operation in ice;

.3 operation in high latitude; and

.4 potential for abandonment onto ice or land;

.2 hazards, as listed in section 3 of the Introduction, as applicable; and

.3 additional hazards, if identified.

CHAPTER 2 – POLAR WATER OPERATIONAL MANUAL (PWOM)

2.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to provide the owner, operator, master and crew with sufficient information regarding the ship's operational capabilities and limitations in order to support their decision-making process.

2.2 Functional requirements

2.2.1 In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 2.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter.

2.2.2 The Manual shall include information on the ship-specific capabilities and limitations in relation to the assessment required under paragraph 1.5.

[5] Refer to guidance to be developed by the Organization.

2.2.3 The Manual shall include or refer to specific procedures to be followed in normal operations and in order to avoid encountering conditions that exceed the ship's capabilities.

2.2.4 The Manual shall include or refer to specific procedures to be followed in the event of incidents in polar waters.

2.2.5 The Manual shall include or refer to specific procedures to be followed in the event that conditions are encountered which exceed the ship's specific capabilities and limitations in paragraph 2.2.2.

2.2.6 The Manual shall include or refer to procedures to be followed when using icebreaker assistance, as applicable.

2.3 Regulations

2.3.1 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraphs 2.2.1 to 2.2.6, the Manual shall be carried on board.

2.3.2 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 2.2.2, the Manual shall contain, where applicable, the methodology used to determine capabilities and limitations in ice.

2.3.3 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 2.2.3, the Manual shall include risk-based procedures for the following:

.1 voyage planning to avoid ice and/or temperatures that exceed the ship's design capabilities or limitations;

.2 arrangements for receiving forecasts of the environmental conditions;

.3 means of addressing any limitations of the hydrographic, meteorological and navigational information available;

.4 operation of equipment required under other chapters of this Code; and

.5 implementation of special measures to maintain equipment and system functionality under low temperatures, topside icing and the presence of sea ice, as applicable.

2.3.4 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 2.2.4, the Manual shall include risk-based procedures to be followed for:

.1 contacting emergency response providers for salvage, search and rescue (SAR), spill response, etc., as applicable; and

.2 in the case of ships ice strengthened in accordance with chapter 3, procedures for maintaining life support and ship integrity in the event of prolonged entrapment by ice.

2.3.5 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 2.2.5, the Manual shall include risk-based procedures to be followed for measures to be taken in the event of encountering ice and/or temperatures which exceed the ship's design capabilities or limitations.

2.3.6 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 2.2.6, the Manual shall include risk-based procedures for monitoring and maintaining safety during operations in ice, as applicable, including any requirements for escort operations or icebreaker assistance. Different operational limitations may apply depending on whether the ship is operating independently or with icebreaker escort. Where appropriate, the PWOM should specify both options.

CHAPTER 3 – SHIP STRUCTURE

3.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to provide that the material and scantlings of the structure retain their structural integrity based on global and local response due to environmental loads and conditions.

3.2 Functional requirements

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 3.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter:

.1 for ships intended to operate in low air temperature, materials used shall be suitable for operation at the ships polar service temperature; and

.2 in ice strengthened ships, the structure of the ship shall be designed to resist both global and local structural loads anticipated under the foreseen ice conditions.

3.3 Regulations

3.3.1 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 3.2.1 above, materials of exposed structures in ships shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account standards acceptable to the Organization[6] or other standards offering an equivalent level of safety based on the polar service temperature.

3.3.2 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 3.2.2 above, the following apply:

.1 scantlings of category A ships shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account standards acceptable to the Organization[7] or other standards offering an equivalent level of safety;

.2 scantlings of category B ships shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account standards acceptable to the Organization[8] or other standards offering an equivalent level of safety;

6 Refer to IACS UR S6 Use of Steel Grades for Various Hull Members – Ships of 90 m in Length and Above (latest version) or IACS URI Requirements concerning Polar Class (latest version), as applicable.

7 Refer to Polar Class 1-5 of IACS URI Requirements concerning Polar Class (latest version).

8 Refer to Polar Class 6-7 of IACS URI Requirements concerning Polar Class (latest version).

.3 scantlings of ice strengthened category C ships shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account acceptable standards adequate for the ice types and concentrations encountered in the area of operation; and

.4 a category C ship need not be ice strengthened if, in the opinion of the Administration, the ship's structure is adequate for its intended operation.

CHAPTER 4 –SUBDIVISION AND STABILITY

4.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to ensure adequate subdivision and stability in both intact and damaged conditions.

4.2 Functional requirements

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 4.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter:

.1 ships shall have sufficient stability in intact conditions when subject to ice accretion; and

.2 ships of category A and B, constructed on or after 1 January 2017, shall have sufficient residual stability to sustain ice-related damages.

4.3 Regulations

4.3.1 Stability in intact conditions

4.3.1.1 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 4.2.1, for ships operating in areas and during periods where ice accretion is likely to occur, the following icing allowance shall be made in the stability calculations:

.1 30 kg/m^2 on exposed weather decks and gangways;

.2 7.5 kg/m^2 for the projected lateral area of each side of the ship above the water plane; and

.3 the projected lateral area of discontinuous surfaces of rail, sundry booms, spars (except masts) and rigging of ships having no sails and the projected lateral area of other small objects shall be computed by increasing the total projected area of continuous surfaces by 5% and the static moments of this area by 10%.

4.3.1.2 Ships operating in areas and during periods where ice accretion is likely to occur shall be:

.1 designed to minimize the accretion of ice; and

.2 equipped with such means for removing ice as the Administration may require; for example, electrical and pneumatic devices, and/or special tools such as axes or wooden clubs for removing ice from bulwarks, rails and erections.

4.3.1.3 Information on the icing allowance included in the stability calculations shall be given in the PWOM.

4.3.1.4 Ice accretion shall be monitored and appropriate measures taken to ensure that the ice accretion does not exceed the values given in the PWOM.

4.3.2 Stability in damaged conditions

4.3.2.1 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 4.2.2, ships of categories A and B, constructed on or after 1 January 2017, shall be able to withstand flooding resulting from hull penetration due to ice impact. The residual stability following ice damage shall be such that the factor s_i, as defined in SOLAS regulations II-1/7-2.2 and II-1/7-2.3, is equal to one for all loading conditions used to calculate the attained subdivision index in SOLAS regulation II-1/7. However, for cargo ships that comply with subdivision and damage stability regulations in another instrument developed by the Organization, as provided by SOLAS regulation II-1/4.1, the residual stability criteria of that instrument shall be met for each loading condition.

4.3.2.2 The ice damage extents to be assumed when demonstrating compliance with paragraph 4.3.2.1 shall be such that:

.1 the longitudinal extent is 4.5% of the upper ice waterline length if centred forward of the maximum breadth on the upper ice waterline, and 1.5% of upper ice waterline length otherwise, and shall be assumed at any longitudinal position along the ship's length;

.2 the transverse penetration extent is 760 mm, measured normal to the shell over the full extent of the damage; and

.3 the vertical extent is the lesser of 20% of the upper ice waterline draught or the longitudinal extent, and shall be assumed at any vertical position between the keel and 120% of the upper ice waterline draught.

CHAPTER 5 – WATERTIGHT AND WEATHERTIGHT INTEGRITY

5.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to provide measures to maintain watertight and weathertight integrity.

5.2 Functional requirements

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 5.1 above, all closing appliances and doors relevant to watertight and weathertight integrity of the ship shall be operable.

5.3 Regulations

In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 5.2 above, the following apply:

.1 for ships operating in areas and during periods where ice accretion is likely to occur, means shall be provided to remove or prevent ice and snow accretion around hatches and doors; and

.2 in addition, for ships intended to operate in low air temperature the following apply:

.1 if the hatches or doors are hydraulically operated, means shall be provided to prevent freezing or excessive viscosity of liquids; and

.2 watertight and weathertight doors, hatches and closing devices which are not within an habitable environment and require access while at sea shall be designed to be operated by personnel wearing heavy winter clothing including thick mittens.

CHAPTER 6 – MACHINERY INSTALLATIONS

6.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to ensure that, machinery installations are capable of delivering the required functionality necessary for safe operation of ships.

6.2 Functional requirements

6.2.1 In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 6.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter.

6.2.1.1 Machinery installations shall provide functionality under the anticipated environmental conditions, taking into account:

.1 ice accretion and/or snow accumulation;

.2 ice ingestion from seawater;

.3 freezing and increased viscosity of liquids;

.4 seawater intake temperature; and

.5 snow ingestion.

6.2.1.2 In addition, for ships intended to operate in low air temperatures:

.1 machinery installations shall provide functionality under the anticipated environmental conditions, also taking into account:

.1 cold and dense inlet air; and

.2 loss of performance of battery or other stored energy device; and

.2 materials used shall be suitable for operation at the ships polar service temperature.

6.2.1.3 In addition, for ships ice strengthened in accordance with chapter 3, machinery installations shall provide functionality under the anticipated environmental conditions, taking into account loads imposed directly by ice interaction.

6.3 Regulations

6.3.1 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 6.2.1.1 above, taking into account the anticipated environmental conditions, the following apply:

.1 machinery installations and associated equipment shall be protected against the effect of ice accretion and/or snow accumulation, ice ingestion from sea water, freezing and increased viscosity of liquids, seawater intake temperature and snow ingestion;

.2 working liquids shall be maintained in a viscosity range that ensures operation of the machinery; and

.3 seawater supplies for machinery systems shall be designed to prevent ingestion of ice,[9] or otherwise arranged to ensure functionality.

6.3.2 In addition, for ships intended to operate in low air temperatures, the following apply:

.1 in order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 6.2.1.2 above, exposed machinery and electrical installation and appliances shall function at the polar service temperature;

.2 in order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 6.2.1.2.1 above, means shall be provided to ensure that combustion air for internal combustion engines driving essential machinery is maintained at a temperature in compliance with the criteria provided by the engine manufacturer; and

.3 in order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 6.2.1.2.2 above, materials of exposed machinery and foundations shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account standards acceptable to the Organization[10, 11] or other standards offering an equivalent level of safety based on the polar service temperature.

6.3.3 In addition, for ships ice strengthened in accordance with chapter 3, in order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 6.2.1.3 above, the following apply:

.1 scantlings of propeller blades, propulsion line, steering equipment and other appendages of category A ships shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account standards acceptable to the Organization[10]or other standards offering an equivalent level of safety;

.2 scantlings of propeller blades, propulsion line, steering equipment and other appendages of category B ships shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account standards acceptable to the Organization[11] or other standards offering an equivalent level of safety; and

.3 scantlings of propeller blades, propulsion line, steering equipment and other appendages of ice-strengthened category C ships shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account acceptable standards adequate with the ice types and concentration encountered in the area of operation.

9 Refer to MSC/Circ.504, *Guidance on design and construction of sea inlets under slush ice conditions.*

10 Refer to Polar Class 1–5 of IACS URI Requirements concerning Polar Class (2011).

11 Refer to Polar Class 6–7 of IACS URI Requirements concerning Polar Class (2011).

CHAPTER 7 – FIRE SAFETY/PROTECTION

7.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to ensure that fire safety systems and appliances are effective and operable, and that means of escape remain available so that persons on board can safely and swiftly escape to the lifeboat and liferaft embarkation deck under the expected environmental conditions.

7.2 Functional requirements

7.2.1 In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 7.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter:

.1 all components of fire safety systems and appliances if installed in exposed positions shall be protected from ice accretion and snow accumulation;

.2 local equipment and machinery controls shall be arranged so as to avoid freezing, snow accumulation and ice accretion and their location to remain accessible at all time;

.3 the design of fire safety systems and appliances shall take into consideration the need for persons to wear bulky and cumbersome cold weather gear, where appropriate;

.4 means shall be provided to remove or prevent ice and snow accretion from accesses; and

.5 extinguishing media shall be suitable for intended operation.

7.2.2 In addition, for ships intended to operate in low air temperature, the following apply:

.1 all components of fire safety systems and appliances shall be designed to ensure availability and effectiveness under the polar service temperature; and

.2 materials used in exposed fire safety systems shall be suitable for operation at the polar service temperature.

7.3 Regulations

7.3.1 In order to comply with the requirement of paragraph 7.2.1.1, the following apply:

.1 isolating and pressure/vacuum valves in exposed locations are to be protected from ice accretion and remain accessible at all time; and

.2 all two-way portable radio communication equipment shall be operable at the polar service temperature.

7.3.2 In order to comply with the requirement of paragraph 7.2.1.2, the following apply:

.1 fire pumps including emergency fire pumps, water mist and water spray pumps shall be located in compartments maintained above freezing;

.2 the fire main is to be arranged so that exposed sections can be isolated and means of draining of exposed sections shall be provided. Fire hoses and nozzles need not be connected to the fire main at all times, and may be stored in protected locations near the hydrants;

.3 firefighter's outfits shall be stored in warm locations on the ship; and

.4 where fixed water-based firefighting systems are located in a space separate from the main fire pumps and use their own independent sea suction, this sea suction is to be also capable of being cleared of ice accumulation.

7.3.3 In addition, for ships intended to operate in low air temperature, the following apply:

.1 In order to comply with the requirement of paragraph 7.2.2.1, portable and semi-portable extinguishers shall be located in positions protected from freezing temperatures, as far as practical. Locations subject to freezing are to be provided with extinguishers capable of operation under the polar service temperature.

.2 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 7.2.2.2 above, materials of exposed fire safety systems shall be approved by the Administration, or a recognized organization accepted by it, taking into account standards acceptable to the Organization[12] or other standards offering an equivalent level of safety based on the polar service temperature.

CHAPTER 8 – LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCES AND ARRANGEMENTS

8.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to provide for safe escape, evacuation and survival.

8.2 Functional requirements

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 8.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter:

8.2.1 *Escape*

8.2.1.1 Exposed escape routes shall remain accessible and safe, taking into consideration the potential icing of structures and snow accumulation.

8.2.1.2 Survival craft and muster and embarkation arrangements shall provide safe abandonment of ship, taking into consideration the possible adverse environmental conditions during an emergency.

8.2.2 *Evacuation*

All life-saving appliances and associated equipment shall provide safe evacuation and be functional under the possible adverse environmental conditions during the maximum expected time of rescue.

8.2.3 *Survival*

8.2.3.1 Adequate thermal protection shall be provided for all persons on board, taking into account the intended voyage, the anticipated weather conditions (cold and wind), and the potential for immersion in polar water, where applicable.

[12] Refer to IACS UR S6 Use of Steel Grades for Various Hull Members – Ships of 90 m in Length and Above (2013) or IACS URI Requirements concerning Polar Class (2011).

8.2.3.2 Life-saving appliances and associated equipment shall take account of the potential of operation in long periods of darkness, taking into consideration the intended voyage.

8.2.3.3 Taking into account the presence of any hazards, as identified in the assessment in chapter 1, resources shall be provided to support survival following abandoning ship, whether to the water, to ice or to land, for the maximum expected time of rescue. These resources shall provide:

.1 a habitable environment;

.2 protection of persons from the effects of cold, wind and sun;

.3 space to accommodate persons equipped with thermal protection adequate for the environment;

.4 means to provide sustenance;

.5 safe access and exit points; and

.6 means to communicate with rescue assets.

8.3 Regulations

8.3.1 *Escape*

In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraphs 8.2.1.1 and 8.2.1.2 above, the following apply:

.1 for ships exposed to ice accretion, means shall be provided to remove or prevent ice and snow accretion from escape routes, muster stations, embarkation areas, survival craft, its launching appliances and access to survival craft;

.2 in addition, for ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017, exposed escape routes shall be arranged so as not to hinder passage by persons wearing suitable polar clothing; and

.3 in addition, for ships intended to operate in low air temperatures, adequacy of embarkation arrangements shall be assessed, having full regard to any effect of persons wearing additional polar clothing.

8.3.2 *Evacuation*

In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 8.2.2 above, the following apply:

.1 ships shall have means to ensure safe evacuation of persons, including safe deployment of survival equipment, when operating in ice-covered waters, or directly onto the ice, as applicable; and

.2 where the regulations of this chapter are achieved by means of adding devices requiring a source of power, this source shall be able to operate independently of the ship's main source of power.

8.3.3 *Survival*

8.3.3.1 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 8.2.3.1 above, the following apply:

.1 for passenger ships, a proper sized immersion suit or a thermal protective aid shall be provided for each person on board; and

.2 where immersion suits are required, they shall be of the insulated type.

8.3.3.2 In addition, for ships intended to operate in extended periods of darkness, in order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 8.2.3.2 above, searchlights suitable for continuous use to facilitate identification of ice shall be provided for each lifeboat.

8.3.3.3 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 8.2.3.3 above, the following apply:

.1 no lifeboat shall be of any type other than partially or totally enclosed type;

.2 taking into account the assessment referred to in chapter 1, appropriate survival resources, which address both individual (personal survival equipment) and shared (group survival equipment) needs, shall be provided, as follows:

.1 life-saving appliances and group survival equipment that provide effective protection against direct wind chill for all persons on board;

.2 personal survival equipment in combination with life-saving appliances or group survival equipment that provide sufficient thermal insulation to maintain the core temperature of persons; and

.3 personal survival equipment that provide sufficient protection to prevent frostbite of all extremities; and

.3 in addition, whenever the assessment required under paragraph 1.5 identifies a potential of abandonment onto ice or land, the following apply:

.1 group survival equipment shall be carried, unless an equivalent level of functionality for survival is provided by the ship's normal life-saving appliances;

.2 when required, personal and group survival equipment sufficient for 110% of the persons on board shall be stowed in easily accessible locations, as close as practical to the muster or embarkation stations;

.3 containers for group survival equipment shall be designed to be easily movable over the ice and be floatable;

.4 whenever the assessment identifies the need to carry personal and group survival equipment, means shall be identified of ensuring that this equipment is accessible following abandonment;

.5 if carried in addition to persons, in the survival craft, the survival craft and launching appliances shall have sufficient capacity to accommodate the additional equipment;

.6 passengers shall be instructed in the use of the personal survival equipment and the action to take in an emergency; and

.7 the crew shall be trained in the use of the personal survival equipment and group survival equipment.

8.3.3.4 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 8.2.3.3.4 above, adequate emergency rations shall be provided, for the maximum expected time of rescue.

CHAPTER 9 – SAFETY OF NAVIGATION

9.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to provide for safe navigation.

9.2 Functional requirements

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 9.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter.

9.2.1 *Nautical information*

Ships shall have the ability to receive up-to-date information including ice information for safe navigation.

9.2.2 *Navigational equipment functionality*

9.2.2.1 The navigational equipment and systems shall be designed, constructed, and installed to retain their functionality under the expected environmental conditions in the area of operation.

9.2.2.2 Systems for providing reference headings and position fixing shall be suitable for the intended areas.

9.2.3 *Additional navigational equipment*

9.2.3.1 Ships shall have the ability to visually detect ice when operating in darkness.

9.2.3.2 Ships involved in operations with an icebreaker escort shall have suitable means to indicate when the ship is stopped.

9.3 Regulations

9.3.1 *Nautical information*

In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 9.2.1 above, ships shall have means of receiving and displaying current information on ice conditions in the area of operation.

9.3.2 *Navigational equipment functionality*

9.3.2.1 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 9.2.2.1 above, the following apply:

.1 ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017, ice strengthened in accordance with chapter 3, shall have either two independent echo-sounding devices or one echo-sounding device with two separate independent transducers;

.2 ships shall comply with SOLAS regulation V/22.1.9.4, irrespective of the date of construction and the size and, depending on the bridge configuration, a clear view astern;

.3 for ships operating in areas, and during periods, where ice accretion is likely to occur, means to prevent the accumulation of ice on antennas required for navigation and communication shall be provided; and

.4 in addition, for ships ice strengthened in accordance with chapter 3, the following apply:

.1 where equipment required by SOLAS chapter V or this chapter have sensors that project below the hull, such sensors shall be protected against ice; and

.2 in category A and B ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017, the bridge wings shall be enclosed or designed to protect navigational equipment and operating personnel.

9.3.2.2 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 9.2.2.2 above, the following apply:

.1 ships shall have two non-magnetic means to determine and display their heading. Both means shall be independent and shall be connected to the ship's main and emergency source of power; and

.2 ships proceeding to latitudes over 80 degrees shall be fitted with at least one GNSS compass or equivalent, which shall be connected to the ship's main and emergency source of power.

9.3.3 *Additional navigational equipment*

9.3.3.1 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 9.2.3.1 ships, with the exception of those solely operating in areas with 24 hours daylight, shall be equipped with two remotely rotatable, narrow-beam search lights controllable from the bridge to provide lighting over an arc of 360 degrees, or other means to visually detect ice.

9.3.3.2 In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 9.2.3.2, ships involved in operations with an icebreaker escort shall be equipped with a manually initiated flashing red light visible from astern to indicate when the ship is stopped. This light shall have a range of visibility of at least two nautical miles, and the horizontal and vertical arcs of visibility shall conform to the stern light specifications required by the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea.

CHAPTER 10 – COMMUNICATION

10.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to provide for effective communication for ships and survival craft during normal operation and in emergency situations.

10.2 Functional requirements

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 10.1 above, the following functional requirements are embodied in the regulations of this chapter.

10.2.1 *Ship communication*

10.2.1.1 Two-way voice and/or data communications ship-to-ship and ship-to-shore shall be available at all points along the intended operating routes.

10.2.1.2 Suitable means of communications shall be provided where escort and convoy operations are expected.

10.2.1.3 Means for two-way on-scene and SAR coordination communications for search and rescue purposes including aeronautical frequencies shall be provided.

10.2.1.4 Appropriate communication equipment to enable telemedical assistance in polar areas shall be provided.

10.2.2 *Survival craft and rescue boat communications capabilities*

10.2.2.1 For ships intended to operate in low air temperature, all rescue boats and lifeboats, whenever released for evacuation, shall maintain capability for distress alerting, locating and on-scene communications.

10.2.2.2 For ships intended to operate in low air temperature, all other survival craft, whenever released, shall maintain capability for transmitting signals for location and for communication.

10.2.2.3 Mandatory communication equipment for use in survival craft, including liferafts, and rescue boats shall be capable of operation during the maximum expected time of rescue.

10.3 Regulations

10.3.1 *Ship communication*

10.3.1.1 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 10.2.1.1 above, communication equipment on board shall have the capabilities for ship-to-ship and ship-to-shore communication, taking into account the limitations of communications systems in high latitudes and the anticipated low temperature.

10.3.1.2 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 10.2.1.2 above, ships intended to provide icebreaking escort shall be equipped with a sound signaling system mounted to face astern to indicate escort and emergency manoeuvres to following ships as described in the International Code of Signals.

10.3.1.3 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 10.2.1.3 above, two-way on-scene and SAR coordination communication capability in ships shall include:

.1 voice and/or data communications with relevant rescue coordination centres; and

.2 equipment for voice communications with aircraft on 121.5 and 123.1 MHz.

10.3.1.4 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 10.2.1.4 above, the communication equipment shall provide for two-way voice and data communication with a Telemedical Assistance Service (TMAS).

10.3.2 *Survival craft and rescue boat communications capabilities*

10.3.2.1 For ships intended to operate in low air temperature, in order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 10.2.2.1 above, all rescue boats and lifeboats, whenever released for evacuation, shall:

.1 for distress alerting, carry one device for transmitting ship to shore alerts;

.2 in order to be located, carry one device for transmitting signals for location; and

.3 for on-scene communications, carry one device for transmitting and receiving on-scene communications.

10.3.2.2 For ships intended to operate in low air temperature, in order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 10.2.2.2 above, all other survival craft shall:

.1 in order to be located, carry one device for transmitting signals for location; and

.2 for on-scene communications, carry one device for transmitting and receiving on-scene communications.

10.3.2.3 In order to comply with the functional requirements of paragraph 10.2.2.3 above, recognizing the limitations arising from battery life, procedures shall be developed and implemented such that mandatory communication equipment for use in survival craft, including liferafts, and rescue boats are available for operation during the maximum expected time of rescue.

CHAPTER 11 – VOYAGE PLANNING

11.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to ensure that the Company, master and crew are provided with sufficient information to enable operations to be conducted with due consideration to safety of ship and persons on board and, as appropriate, environmental protection.

11.2 Functional requirement

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 11.1 above, the voyage plan shall take into account the potential hazards of the intended voyage.

11.3 Requirements

In order to comply with the functional requirement of paragraph 11.2 above, the master shall consider a route through polar waters, taking into account the following:

.1 the procedures required by the PWOM;

.2 any limitations of the hydrographic information and aids to navigation available;

.3 current information on the extent and type of ice and icebergs in the vicinity of the intended route;

.4 statistical information on ice and temperatures from former years;

.5 places of refuge;

.6 current information and measures to be taken when marine mammals are encountered relating to known areas with densities of marine mammals, including seasonal migration areas;[13]

.7 current information on relevant ships' routing systems, speed recommendations and vessel traffic services relating to known areas with densities of marine mammals, including seasonal migration areas;[14]

.8 national and international designated protected areas along the route; and

.9 operation in areas remote from search and rescue (SAR) capabilities.[15]

CHAPTER 12 –MANNING AND TRAINING

12.1 Goal

The goal of this chapter is to ensure that ships operating in polar waters are appropriately manned by adequately qualified, trained and experienced personnel.

12.2 Functional requirements

In order to achieve the goal set out in paragraph 12.1 above, companies shall ensure that masters, chief mates and officers in charge of a navigational watch on board ships operating in polar waters shall have completed training to attain the abilities that are appropriate to the capacity to be filled and duties and responsibilities to be taken up, taking into account the provisions of the STCW Convention and the STCW Code, as amended.

12.3 Regulations

12.3.1 In order to meet the functional requirement of paragraph 12.2 above while operating in polar waters, masters, chief mates and officers in charge of a navigational watch shall be qualified in accordance with chapter V of the STCW Convention and the STCW Code, as amended, as follows:

Ice conditions	Tankers	Passenger ships	Other
Ice Free	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Open waters	Basic training for master, chief mate and officers in charge of a navigational watch	Basic training for master, chief mate and officers in charge of a navigational watch	Not applicable

13 Refer to MEPC/Circ.674 on *Guidance document for minimizing the risk of ship strikes with cetaceans*.

14 Refer to MEPC/Circ.674 on *Guidance document for minimizing the risk of ship strikes with cetaceans*.

15 Refer to MSC.1/Circ.1184 on *Enhanced contingency planning guidance for passenger ships operating in areas remote from SAR facilities* and resolution A.999(25) *on Guidelines on voyage planning for passenger ships operating in remote areas.*

Ice conditions	Tankers	Passenger ships	Other
Ice Free	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Other waters	Advanced training for master and chief mate. Basic training for officers in charge of a navigational watch	Advanced training for master and chief mate. Basic training for officers in charge of a navigational watch	Advanced training for master and chief mate. Basic training for officers in charge of a navigational watch.

12.3.2 The Administration may allow the use of a person(s) other than the master, chief mate or officers of the navigational watch to satisfy the requirements for training, as required by paragraph 12.3.1, provided that:

.1 this person(s) shall be qualified and certified in accordance with regulation II/2 of the STCW Convention and section A-II/2 of the STCW Code, and meets the advance training requirements noted in the above table;

.2 while operating in polar waters the ship has sufficient number of persons meeting the appropriate training requirements for polar waters to cover all watches;

.3 this person(s) is subject to the Administration's minimum hours of rest requirements at all times;

.4 when operating in waters other than open waters or bergy waters, the master, chief mate and officers in charge of a navigational watch on passenger ships and tankers shall meet the applicable basic training requirements noted in the above table; and

.5 when operating in waters with ice concentration of more than 2/10, the master, chief mate and officers in charge of a navigational watch on cargo ships other than tankers shall meet the applicable basic training requirements noted in the above table.

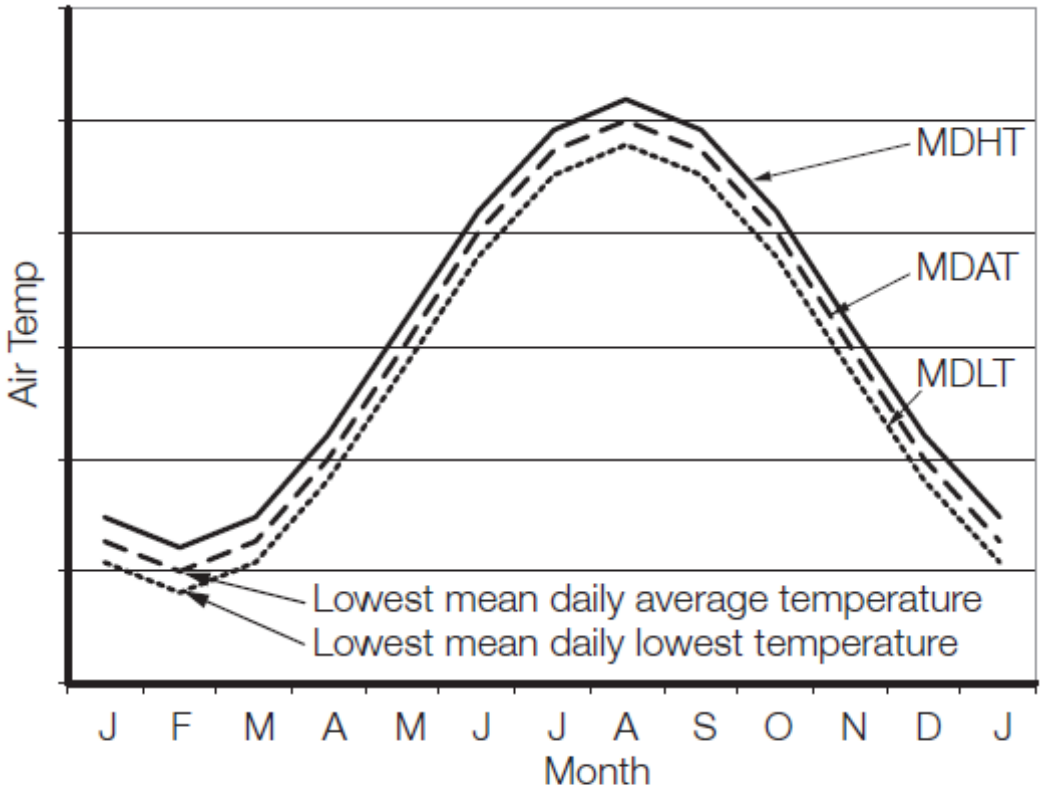
12.3.3 The use of a person other than the officer of the navigational watch to satisfy the requirements for training does not relieve the master or officer of the navigational watch from their duties and obligations for the safety of the ship.

12.3.4 Every crew member shall be made familiar with the procedures and equipment contained or referenced in the PWOM relevant to their assigned duties.

PART I-B

ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE REGARDING THE PROVISIONS OF THE INTRODUCTION AND PART I-A

1 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO SECTION 2 (DEFINITIONS) OF THE INTRODUCTION



Definitions used in the figure above

MDHT – Mean Daily High Temperature

MDAT – Mean Daily Average Temperature

MDLT – Mean Daily Low Temperature

Guidance instructions for determining MDLT:

1 Determine the daily low temperature for each day for a 10 year period.

2 Determine the average of the values over the 10 year period for each day.

3 Plot the daily averages over the year.

4 Take the lowest of the averages for the season of operation.

2 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 1 (GENERAL)

1 Limitations for operating in ice

1.1 Limitations for operation in ice can be determined using systems, tools or analysis that evaluate the risks posed by the anticipated ice conditions to the ship, taking into account factors such as its ice class, seasonal changing of ice strength, icebreaker support, ice type, thickness and concentration. The ship's structural capacity to resist ice load and the ship's planned operations should be considered. The limitations should be incorporated into an ice operational decision support system.

1.2 Limitations for operating in ice should be determined using an appropriate methodology, such methodologies exist, have been in use for a number of years and have been validated with service experience. Existing methodologies and other systems may be acceptable to the Administration.

1.3 Operation in ice should take into account any operational limitations of the ship; extended information on the ice operational methodology contained in the PWOM; the condition of the ship and ship's systems, historical weather/ice data and weather/ice forecasts for the intended area of operation, current conditions including visual ice observations, sea state, visibility and the judgment of qualified personnel.

2 Operational assessment

2.1 This guidance is intended to support shipowners carrying out, and Administrations reviewing, the assessment required in part I-A, section 1.5, for operational limitations and procedures for the Polar Ship Certificate.

2.2 Steps for an operational assessment:

.1 identify relevant hazards from section 3 of the Introduction and other hazards based on a review of the intended operations;

.2 develop a model[16] to analyse risks considering:

.1 development of accident scenarios;

.2 probability of events in each accident scenario; and

.3 consequence of end states in each scenario;

.3 assess risks and determine acceptability:

.1 estimate risk levels in accordance with the selected modelling approach; and

.2 assess whether risk levels are acceptable; and

[16] Reference is made to the techniques in appendix 3 of the *Revised guidelines for Formal Safety Assessment (FSA) for use in the IMO Rule-Making Process* (MSC-MEPC.2/Circ.12) and standard IEC/ISO 31010 "Risk management – Risk assessment techniques".

.4 in the event that risk levels determined in steps 1 to 3 are considered to be too high, identify current or develop new risk control options that aim to achieve one or more of the following:

.1 reduce the frequency of failures through better design, procedures, training, etc.;

.2 mitigate the effect of failures in order to prevent accidents;

.3 limit the circumstances in which failures may occur; or

.4 mitigate consequences of accidents; and

.5 incorporate risk control options for design, procedures, training and limitations, as applicable.

3 Performance standards

A system previously accepted based on manufacturer certifications, classification society certifications and/or satisfactory service of existing systems may be acceptable for installation on new and existing ships if no performance or testing standards are accepted by the Organization.

3 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 2 (POLAR WATER OPERATIONAL MANUAL (PWOM))

3.1 Recommendation on the content of the Polar Water Operational Manual

The Polar Water Operational Manual (PWOM) is intended to address all aspects of operations addressed by chapter 2 of part I-A. When appropriate information, procedures or plans exist elsewhere in a ship's documentation, the PWOM itself does not need to replicate this material, but may instead cross-reference the relevant reference document.

A model Table of Contents is found in appendix 2.

The model follows the general structure of chapter 2. Not every section outlined below will be applicable to every polar ship. Many category C ships that undertake occasional or limit polar voyages will not need to have procedures for situations with a very low probability of occurrence. However, it may still be advisable to retain a common structure for the PWOM as a reminder that if assumptions change then the contents of the manual may also need to be updated. Noting an aspect as "not applicable" also indicates to the Administration that this aspect has been considered and not merely omitted.

3.2 Guidance on navigation with icebreaker assistance

With respect to navigation with icebreaker assistance, the following should be considered:

.1 while approaching the starting point of the ice convoy to follow an icebreaker/icebreakers or in the case of escorting by icebreaker of one ship to the point of meeting with the icebreaker, ships should establish radio communication on the VHF channel 16 and act in compliance with the icebreaker's instructions;

.2 the icebreaker rendering the icebreaker assistance of ship ice convoy should command ships in the ice convoy;

.3 position of a ship in the ice convoy should be determined by the icebreaker rendering the assistance;

.4 ship within the ice convoy, in accordance with the instructions of the icebreaker rendering the assistance, should establish communication with the icebreaker by VHF channel indicated by the icebreaker;

.5 the ship, while navigating in the ice convoy, should ensure compliance with the instructions of the icebreaker;

.6 position in the ice convoy, speed and distance to a ship ahead should be as instructed by the icebreaker;

.7 the ship should immediately notify the icebreaker of any difficulties to maintain the position within the ice convoy, speed and/or distance to any other ship in the ice convoy; and

.8 the ship should immediately report to the icebreaker of any damage.

3.3 Guidance on the development of contingency plans

In developing the ship's contingency plans ships should consider damage control measures arrangements for emergency transfer of liquids and access to tanks and spaces during salvage operations.

See also additional guidance to chapter 9.

4 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 3 (SHIP STRUCTURE)

Method for determining equivalent ice class

1 The guidance presented below is intended to assist in determining equivalency with standards acceptable to the Organization, as referenced in chapters 3 and 6 of the Code. The methodology is consistent with guidance developed by the Organization[17] while allowing for the use of a simplified approach.

2 The basic approach for considering equivalency for categories A and B ships can be the same for both new and existing ships. It involves comparing other ice classes to the IACS Polar Classes. For ice classes under category C, additional information on comparisons of strengthening levels is available for the guidance of owners and Administrations.[18] The responsibility for generating the equivalency request and supporting information required should rest with the owner/operator. Review/approval of any equivalency request should be undertaken by the flag State Administration, or by a recognized organization acting on its behalf under the provisions of the Code for Recognized Organizations (RO Code). Several classification societies have developed easy-to-use tools for determination of compliance with the IACS Polar Class structural requirements, as have some Administrations and other third parties.

---

17 Refer to the G*uidelines for the approval of alternatives and equivalents as provided for in various IMO instruments* (MSC.1/Circ.1455).

18 Refer to the annex to HELCOM Recommendation 25/7, Safety of Winter Navigation in the Baltic Sea Area, available at www.helcom.fi

3 The scope of a simplified equivalency assessment (referring to paragraphs 6.1 to 6.3 below) is expected to be limited to materials selection, structural strength of the hull and propulsion machinery.

4 If there is not full and direct compliance, then an equivalent level of risk can be accepted in accordance with guidance provided by the Organization. An increase in the probability of an event can be balanced by a reduction in its consequences. Alternatively, a reduction in probability could potentially allow acceptance of more serious consequences. Using a hull area example, a local shortfall in strength level or material grade could be accepted if the internal compartment is a void space, for which local damage will not put the overall safety of the ship at risk or lead to any release of pollutants.

5 For existing ships, service experience can assist in risk assessment. As an example, for an existing ship with a record of polar ice operations a shortfall in the extent of the ice belt (hull areas) may be acceptable if there is no record of damage to the deficient area; i.e. a ship that would generally meet PC 5 requirements but in limited areas is only PC 7 could still be considered as a category A, PC 5 ship. In all such cases, the ship's documentation should make clear the nature and scope of any deficiencies.

6 The process includes the following stages of assessment:

.1 select the target Polar Class for equivalency;

.2 compare materials used in the design with minimum requirements under the IACS Polar Class URs; identify any shortfalls; and

.3 compare strength levels of hull and machinery components design with requirements under the IACS Polar Class URs; quantify levels of compliance.

7 Where gaps in compliance are identified in steps 1 to 3, additional steps should be necessary to demonstrate equivalency, as outlined below:

.4 identify any risk mitigation measures incorporated in the design of the ship (over and above the requirements of the Code and IACS URs);

.5 where applicable, provide documentation of service experience of existing ships, in conditions relevant to the target ice class for equivalency; and

.6 undertake an assessment, taking into account information from steps 1 to 5, as applicable, and on the principles outlined in paragraphs 2 to 6 above.

8 Documentation provided with an application for equivalency should identify each stage that has been undertaken, and sufficient supporting information to validate assessments.

9 Where a ship in categories A or B is provided with an equivalency for ice class by its flag State, this should be noted in its Polar Ship Certificate.

5 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 4 (SUBDIVISION AND STABILITY)

No additional guidance

6 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 5 (WATERTIGHT AND WEATHERTIGHT INTEGRITY)

No additional guidance.

7 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 6 (MACHINERY INSTALLATIONS)

Refer to additional guidance to chapter 3.

8 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 7 (FIRE SAFETY/PROTECTION)

No additional guidance.

9 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 8 (LIFE-SAVING APPLIANCES AND ARRANGEMENTS)

9.1 Sample personal survival equipment

When considering resources to be included with the personal survival equipment, the following should be taken into account:

Suggested equipment
Protective clothing (hat, gloves, socks, face and neck protection, etc.)
Skin protection cream
Thermal protective aid
Sunglasses
Whistle
Drinking mug
Penknife
Polar survival guidance
Emergency food
Carrying bag

9.2 Sample group survival equipment

When considering resources to be included in the group survival equipment, the following should be taken into account:

Suggested equipment
Shelter – tents or storm shelters or equivalent – sufficient for maximum number of persons
Thermal protective aids or similar – sufficient for maximum number of persons
Sleeping bags – sufficient for at least one between two persons
Foam sleeping mats or similar – sufficient for at least one between two persons
Shovels – at least 2
Sanitation (e.g. toilet paper)
Stove and fuel – sufficient for maximum number of persons ashore and maximum anticipated time of rescue

Suggested equipment
Emergency food – sufficient for maximum number of persons ashore and maximum anticipated time of rescue
Flashlights – one per shelter
Waterproof and windproof matches – two boxes per shelter
Whistle
Signal mirror
Water containers & water purification tablets
Spare set of personal survival equipment
Group survival equipment container (waterproof and floatable)

10 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 9 (SAFETY OF NAVIGATION)

10.1 Radars equipped with enhanced ice detection capability should be promoted used, in particular, in shallow waters.

10.2 As the chart coverage of polar waters in many areas may not currently be adequate for coastal navigation, navigational officers should:

.1 exercise care to plan and monitor their voyage accordingly, taking due account of the information and guidance in the appropriate nautical publications;

.2 be familiar with the status of hydrographic surveys and the availability and quality of chart information for the areas in which they intend to operate;

.3 be aware of potential chart datum discrepancies with GNSS positioning; and

.4 aim to plan their route through charted areas and well clear of known shoal depths, following established routes whenever possible.

10.3 Any deviations from the planned route should be undertaken with particular caution. For example, and when operating on the continental shelf:

.1 the echo-sounder should be working and monitored to detect any sign of unexpected depth variation, especially when the chart is not based on a full search of the sea floor; and

.2 independent cross-checking of positioning information (e.g. visual and radar fixing and GNSS) should be undertaken at every opportunity. Mariners should ensure to report to the relevant charting authority (Hydrographic Office) any information that might contribute to improving the nautical charts and publications.

10.4 Ships should be fitted with:

.1 a suitable means to de-ice sufficient conning position windows to provide unimpaired forward and astern vision from conning positions; and

.2 an efficient means of clearing melted ice, freezing rain, snow, mist and spray from outside and accumulated condensation from inside. A mechanical means to clear moisture from the outside face of a window should have operating mechanisms protected from freezing or the accumulation of ice that would impair effective operation.

11 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 10 (COMMUNICATION)

11.1 Limitations of communication systems in high latitude

11.1.1 Current maritime digital communication systems were not designed to cover Polar waters.

11.1.2 VHF is still largely used for communication at sea, but only over short distances (line of sight) and normally only for voice communication. HF and MF are also used for emergency situations. Digital VHF, mobile phone systems and other types of wireless technology offer enough digital capacity for many maritime applications, but only to ships within sight of shore-based stations, and are, therefore, not generally available in polar waters. AIS could also be used for low data-rate communication, but there are very few base stations, and the satellite-based AIS system is designed for data reception only.

11.1.3 The theoretical limit of coverage for GEO systems is 81.3° north or south, but instability and signal dropouts can occur at latitudes as low as 70° north or south under certain conditions. Many factors influence the quality of service offered by GEO systems, and they have different effects depending on the system design.

11.1.4 Non-GMDSS systems may be available and may be effective for communication in polar waters.

11.2 Advice for the operation of multiple alerting and communication devices in the event of an incident

A procedure should be developed to ensure that when survival craft are in close proximity, not more than two alerting or locating devices are activated (as required by regulation 10.3.2) at the same time. This is to:

.1 preserve battery life;

.2 enable extended periods of time for the transmission of alerting or locating signals; and

.3 avoid potential interference.

11.3 For satellite distress beacons, although multiple beacon transmissions can be detected successfully by the satellite system, it is not recommended to activate multiple beacons, unless the survival craft operating the beacons are widely dispersed, as this can cause interference on direction-finding equipment.

11.4 Advice on location and communication equipment to be carried by rescue boats and survival craft

In determining the equipment to be carried for transmitting signals for location, the capabilities of the search and rescue resources likely to respond should be borne in mind. Responding ships and aircraft may not be able to home to 406/121.5 MHz, in which case other locating devices (e.g. AIS-SART) should be considered.

12 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 11 (VOYAGE PLANNING)

In developing and executing a voyage plan ships should consider the following:

.1 in the event that marine mammals are encountered, any existing best practices should be considered to minimize unnecessary disturbance; and

.2 planning to minimize the impact of the ship's voyage where ships are trafficking near areas of cultural heritage and cultural significance.

See also additional guidance to chapter 9.

13 ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE TO CHAPTER 12 (MANNING AND TRAINING)

No additional guidance.

PART II-A
POLLUTION PREVENTION MEASURES

CHAPTER 1 – PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY OIL

1.1 Operational requirements

1.1.1 In Arctic waters any discharge into the sea of oil or oily mixtures from any ship shall be prohibited.

1.1.2 The provisions of paragraph 1.1.1 shall not apply to the discharge of clean or segregated ballast.

1.1.3 Subject to the approval of the Administration, a category A ship constructed before 1 January 2017 that cannot comply with paragraph 1.1.1 for oil or oily mixtures from machinery spaces and is operating continuously in Arctic waters for more than 30 days shall comply with paragraph 1.1.1 not later than the first intermediate or renewal survey, whichever comes first, one year after 1 January 2017. Until such date these ships shall comply with the discharge requirements of MARPOL Annex I regulation 15.3.

1.1.4 Operation in polar waters shall be taken into account, as appropriate, in the Oil Record Books, manuals and the shipboard oil pollution emergency plan or the shipboard marine pollution emergency plan as required by MARPOL Annex I.

1.2 Structural requirements

1.2.1 For category A and B ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017 with an aggregate oil fuel capacity of less than 600 m^3, all oil fuel tanks shall be separated from the outer shell by a distance of not less than 0.76 m. This provision does not apply to small oil fuel tanks with a maximum individual capacity not greater than 30 m^3.

1.2.2 For category A and B ships other than oil tankers constructed on or after 1 January 2017, all cargo tanks constructed and utilized to carry oil shall be separated from the outer shell by a distance of not less than 0.76 m.

1.2.3 For category A and B oil tankers of less than 5,000 tonnes deadweight constructed on or after 1 January 2017, the entire cargo tank length shall be protected with:

.1 double bottom tanks or spaces complying with the applicable requirements of regulation 19.6.1 of MARPOL Annex I; and

.2 wing tanks or spaces arranged in accordance with regulation 19.3.1 of MARPOL Annex I and complying with the applicable requirements for distance referred to in regulation 19.6.2 of MARPOL Annex I.

1.2.4 For category A and B ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017 all oil residue (sludge) tanks and oily bilge water holding tanks shall be separated from the outer shell by a distance of not less than 0.76 m. This provision does not apply to small tanks with a maximum individual capacity not greater than 30 m^3.

CHAPTER 2 – CONTROL OF POLLUTION BY NOXIOUS LIQUID SUBSTANCES IN BULK

2.1 Operational requirements

2.1.1 In Arctic waters any discharge into the sea of noxious liquid substances (NLS), or mixtures containing such substances, shall be prohibited.

2.1.2 Operation in polar waters shall be taken into account, as appropriate, in the Cargo Record Book, the Manual and the shipboard marine pollution emergency plan for noxious liquid substances or the shipboard marine pollution emergency plan as required by MARPOL Annex II.

2.1.3 For category A and B ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017, the carriage of NLS identified in chapter 17, column e, as ship type 3 or identified as NLS in chapter 18 of the International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk in cargo tanks of type 3 ships shall be subject to the approval of the Administration. The results shall be reflected on the International Pollution Prevention Certificate for the Carriage of Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk or Certificate of Fitness identifying the operation in polar waters.

CHAPTER 3 –PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY HARMFUL SUBSTANCES CARRIED BY SEA IN PACKAGED FORM

Kept blank intentionally.

CHAPTER 4 –PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY SEWAGE FROM SHIPS

4.1 Definitions

4.1.1 *Constructed* means a ship the keel of which is laid or which is at a similar stage of construction.

4.1.2 *Ice-shelf* means a floating ice sheet of considerable thickness showing 2 to 50 m or more above sea-level, attached to the coast.[19]

4.1.3 *Fast ice* means sea ice which forms and remains fast along the coast, where it is attached to the shore, to an ice wall, to an ice front, between shoals or grounded icebergs.[19]

4.2 Operational requirements

4.2.1 Discharges of sewage within polar waters are prohibited except when performed in accordance with MARPOL Annex IV and the following requirements:

.1 the ship is discharging comminuted and disinfected sewage in accordance with regulation 11.1.1 of MARPOL Annex IV at a distance of more than 3 nautical miles from any ice-shelf or fast ice and shall be as far as practicable from areas of ice concentration exceeding 1/10; or

.2 the ship is discharging sewage that is not comminuted or disinfected in accordance with regulation 11.1.1 of MARPOL Annex IV and at a distance of more than 12 nautical miles from any ice-shelf or fast ice and shall be as far as practicable from areas of ice concentration exceeding 1/10; or

[19] Refer to the WMO Sea-Ice Nomenclature.

.3 the ship has in operation an approved sewage treatment plant[20] certified by the Administration to meet the operational requirements in either regulation 9.1.1 or 9.2.1 of MARPOL Annex IV, and discharges sewage in accordance with regulation 11.1.2 of Annex IV and shall be as far as practicable from the nearest land, any ice-shelf, fast ice or areas of ice concentration exceeding 1/10.

4.2.2 Discharge of sewage into the sea is prohibited from category A and B ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017 and all passenger ships constructed on or after 1 January 2017, except when such discharges are in compliance with paragraph 4.2.1.3 of this chapter.

4.2.3 Notwithstanding the requirements of paragraph 4.2.1, category A and B ships that operate in areas of ice concentrations exceeding 1/10 for extended periods of time, may only discharge sewage using an approved sewage treatment plant certified by the Administration to meet the operational requirements in either regulation 9.1.1 or 9.2.1 of MARPOL Annex IV. Such discharges shall be subject to the approval by the Administration.

CHAPTER 5 – PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY GARBAGE FROM SHIPS

5.1 Definitions

5.1.1 *Ice-shelf* means a floating ice sheet of considerable thickness showing 2 to 50 m or more above sea-level, attached to the coast[21].

5.1.2 *Fast ice* means sea ice which forms and remains fast along the coast, where it is attached to the shore, to an ice wall, to an ice front, between shoals or grounded icebergs[21]

5.2 Operational requirements

5.2.1 In Arctic waters, discharge of garbage into the sea permitted in accordance with regulation 4 of MARPOL Annex V, shall meet the following additional requirements:

.1 discharge into the sea of food wastes is only permitted when the ship is as far as practicable from areas of ice concentration exceeding 1/10, but in any case not less than 12 nautical miles from the nearest land, nearest ice-shelf, or nearest fast ice;

.2 food wastes shall be comminuted or ground and shall be capable of passing through a screen with openings no greater than 25 mm. Food wastes shall not be contaminated by any other garbage type;

.3 food wastes shall not be discharged onto the ice;

.4 discharge of animal carcasses is prohibited; and

.5 discharge of cargo residues that cannot be recovered using commonly available methods for unloading shall only be permitted while the ship is en route and where all the following conditions are satisfied:

.1 cargo residues, cleaning agents or additives, contained in hold washing water do not include any substances classified as harmful to the marine environment, taking into account guidelines developed by the Organization;

[20] Refer to resolution MEPC.2(VI), resolution MEPC.159(55) or resolution MEPC.227(64) as applicable.

[21] Refer to the WMO Sea-Ice Nomenclature.

.2 both the port of departure and the next port of destination are within Arctic waters and the ship will not transit outside Arctic waters between those ports;

.3 no adequate reception facilities are available at those ports taking into account guidelines developed by the Organization; and

.4 where the conditions of subparagraphs 5.2.1.5.1, 5.2.1.5.2 and 5.2.1.5.3 of this paragraph have been fulfilled, discharge of cargo hold washing water containing residues shall be made as far as practicable from areas of ice concentration exceeding 1/10, but in any case not less than 12 nautical miles from the nearest land, nearest ice shelf, or nearest fast ice.

5.2.2 In the Antarctic area, discharge of garbage into the sea permitted in accordance with regulation 6 of MARPOL Annex V, shall meet the following additional requirements:

.1 discharges under regulation 6.1 of MARPOL Annex V shall be as far as practicable from areas of ice concentration exceeding 1/10, but in any case not less than 12 nautical miles from the nearest fast ice; and

.2 food waste shall not be discharged onto ice.

5.2.3 Operation in polar waters shall be taken into account, as appropriate, in the Garbage Record Book, Garbage Management Plan and the placards as required by MARPOL Annex V.

PART II-B

ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE REGARDING THE PROVISIONS OF THE INTRODUCTION AND PART II-A

1 Additional guidance to chapter 1

1.1 Ships are encouraged to apply regulation 43 of MARPOL Annex I when operating in Arctic waters.

1.2 Non-toxic biodegradable lubricants or water-based systems should be considered in lubricated components located outside the underwater hull with direct seawater interfaces, like shaft seals and slewing seals.

2 Additional guidance to chapter 2

Category A and B ships, constructed on or after 1 January 2017 and certified to carry noxious liquid substances (NLS), are encouraged to carry NLS identified in chapter 17, column e, as ship type 3 or identified as NLS in chapter 18 of the *International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk*, in tanks separated from the outer shell by a distance of not less than 760 mm.

3 Additional guidance to chapter 5

In order to minimize the risks associated with animal cargo mortalities, consideration should be given to how animal carcasses will be managed, treated, and stored on board when ships carrying such cargo are operating in polar waters. Reference is made in particular to the *2012 Guidelines for the implementation of MARPOL Annex V* (resolution MEPC.219(63), as amended by resolution MEPC.239(65)) and the *2012 Guidelines for the development of garbage management plans* (resolution MEPC.220(63)).

4 Additional guidance under other environmental conventions and guidelines

4.1 Until the *International Convention for the Control and Management of Ships' Ballast Water and Sediments* enters into force, the ballast water management provisions of the ballast water exchange standard, set out in regulation D-1, or the ballast water performance standard, set out in regulation D-2 of the Convention should be considered as appropriate. The provisions of the *Guidelines for ballast water exchange in the Antarctic treaty area* (resolution MEPC.163(56)) should be taken into consideration along with other relevant guidelines developed by the Organization.

4.2 In selecting the ballast water management system, attention should be paid to limiting conditions specified in the appendix of the Type Approval Certificate and the temperature under which the system has been tested, in order to ensure its suitability and effectiveness in polar waters.

4.3 In order to minimize the risk of invasive aquatic species transfers via biofouling, measures should be considered to minimize the risk of more rapid degradation of anti-fouling coatings associated with polar ice operations. Reference is made in particular to the *2011 Guidelines for the control and management of ships' biofouling to minimize the transfer of invasive aquatic species* (resolution MEPC.207(62)).

Table: Example of matters related to anti-fouling systems taken into consideration by some ice-going ships
(this table is used by some operators of ice-going ships)

	Hull	Sea chest
Year round operation in ice-covered polar waters		• Abrasion resistant coating. • Compliant with the AFS Convention. Thickness of anti-fouling system to be decided by shipowner.
Intermittent operation in ice-covered polar waters	• Abrasion resistant low friction ice coating. • In sides, above bilge keel, max thickness of anti-fouling system 75 µm, to protect hull between application of anti-fouling system and next anticipated voyage to ice-covered waters. In bottom area thickness to be decided by shipowner. Composition of anti-fouling system should also be decided by the shipowner.	• Compliant with the AFS Convention. Thickness of anti-fouling system to be decided by shipowner.
Category B and C vessels	• Compliant with the AFS Convention. Thickness of anti-fouling system to be decided by shipowner.	• Compliant with the AFS Convention. Thickness of anti-fouling system to be decided by shipowner.

APPENDIX 1

Form of Certificate for Ships operating in Polar Waters

POLAR SHIP CERTIFICATE

This Certificate shall be supplemented by a Record of Equipment for the Polar Ship Certificate

(Official seal)

(State)

Issued under the provisions of the

International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended

under the authority of the Government of

(name of the State)

by _____
(person or organization authorized)

Particulars of ship[22]

Name of ship……
Distinctive number or letters……..
Port of registry……..
Gross tonnage……..
IMO Number[23]…….....

[22] Alternatively, the particulars of the ship may be placed horizontally in boxes.

[23] In accordance with *IMO ship identification number scheme* adopted by the Organization by resolution A.1078(28).

THIS IS TO CERTIFY:

1 That the ship has been surveyed in accordance with the applicable safety-related provisions of the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters.

2 That the survey[24] showed that the structure, equipment, fittings, radio station arrangements, and materials of the ship and the condition thereof are in all respects satisfactory and that the ship complies with the relevant provisions of the Code.

Category A/B/C[25] ship as follows:

Ice Class and Ice Strengthened Draft Range

Ice class	**Maximum draft**		**Minimum draft**	
	Aft	Fwd	Aft	Fwd

2.1 Ship type: tanker/passenger ship/other[4]

2.2 Ship restricted to operate in ice free waters/open waters/other ice conditions[4]

2.3 Ship intended to operate in low air temperature: Yes/No[4]

2.3.1 Polar Service Temperature: ……..°C/Not Applicable[4]

2.4 Maximum expected time of rescue …….days

3 The ship was/was not[4] subjected to an alternative design and arrangements in pursuance of regulation(s) XIV/4 of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended.

4 A Document of approval of alternative design and arrangements for structure, machinery and electrical installations/fire protection/life-saving appliances and arrangements[4] is/is not[4] appended to this Certificate.

5 Operational limitations

The ship has been assigned the following limitations for operation in polar waters:

5.1 Ice conditions: .....

.....

5.2 Temperature: .....

5.3 High latitudes: .....

[24] Subject to regulation 1.3 of the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters.

[25] Delete as appropriate.

This certificate is valid until . . . . subject to the annual/periodical/intermediate surveys in accordance with section 1.3 of the Code[26]

Completion date of the survey on which this certificate is based:. . . . .
(dd/mm/yyyy)

Issued at . . . .
(Place of issue of certificate)

. . . .

(*Date of issue)* *(Signature of authorized official issuing the certificate)*

(Seal or stamp of the issuing authority, as appropriate)

Endorsement for annual, periodical and intermediate surveys[6]

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that, at a survey required by regulation 1.3 of the Code, the ship was found to comply with the relevant requirements of the Code.

Annual survey:

Signed: ……………………………………………
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: ……………………………………………

Date: ……………………………………………
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

Annual/Periodical/Intermediate[27] survey:

Signed: ……………………………………………
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: ……………………………………………

Date: ……………………………………………
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

Annual/Periodical/Intermediate[6] survey:

Signed: ……………………………………………
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: ……………………………………………

Date: ……………………………………………
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

---

26 Delete as applicable.

27 Delete as appropriate.

Annual survey:

Signed: …….
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: …….

Date: …….
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

Endorsement to extend the certificate if valid for less than 5 years where regulation I/14(c) of the Convention applies[28]

The ship complies with the relevant requirements of the Convention, and this certificate shall, in accordance with regulation I/14(c) of the Convention, be accepted as valid until.....

Signed: .....
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: .....

Date: .....
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

Endorsement where the renewal survey has been completed and regulation I/14(d) of the Convention applies[7]

The ship complies with the relevant requirements of the Convention, and this certificate shall, in accordance with regulation I/14(d) of the Convention, be accepted as valid until.....

Signed: .....
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: .....

Date: .....
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

Endorsement to extend the validity of the certificate until reaching the port of survey or for a period of grace where regulation I/14(e) or I/14(f) of the Convention applies[7]

This certificate shall, in accordance with regulation I/14(e)/I/14(f)[7] of the Convention, be accepted as valid until.....

Signed: .....
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: .....

Date: .....
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

[28] Delete as appropriate.

Endorsement for advancement of anniversary date where regulation I/14(h) of the Convention applies[29]

In accordance with regulation I/14(h) of the Convention, the new anniversary date is .....

Signed: .....
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: .....

Date: .....
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

In accordance with regulation I/14(h) of the Convention, the new anniversary date is .....

Signed: .....
(Signature of authorized official)

Place: .....

Date: .....
(Seal or stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

[29] Delete as appropriate.

Record of Equipment for the Polar Ship Certificate

This record shall be permanently attached to the
Polar Ships Certificate

RECORD OF EQUIPMENT FOR COMPLIANCE WITH THE INTERNATIONAL CODE
FOR SHIPS OPERATING IN POLAR WATERS

1 Particulars of ship:

Name of ship:……
Distinctive number or letters:……..

2 Record of equipment

2.1 *Life-saving appliances*

1	Total number of immersion suits with insulation:	.....
1.1	for crew	.....
1.2	for passengers	.....
2	Total number of thermal protective aids	.....
3	Personal and Group Survival Equipment	.....
3.1	Personal survival equipment – for number of persons	.....
3.2	Group survival equipment – for number persons	.....
3.3	Total capacity of liferafts in compliance with chapter 8 of the Polar Code	.....
3.4	Total capacity of lifeboats in compliance with chapter 8 of the Polar Code	.....

2.2 *Navigation equipment*

1	Two independent echo-sounding devices or a device with two separate independent transducers	.....
2	Remotely rotatable, narrow-beam search lights controllable from the bridge or other means to visually detect ice	.....
3	Manually initiated flashing red light visible from astern (for ships involved in icebreaking operations)	.....
4	Two or more non-magnetic independent means to determine and display heading	.....
5	GNSS compass or equivalent (for ships proceeding to latitudes over 80 degrees)	.....

2.3 *Communication equipment*

1	Sound signaling system mounted to face astern to indicate escort and emergency manoeuvres to following ships as described in the International Code of Signals (for ships intended to provide ice breaking escort).	……..
2	Voice and/or data communications with relevant rescue coordination centres.	.....
3	Equipment for voice communications with aircraft on 121.5 and 123.1 MHz.	.....
4	Two-way voice and data communication with a Telemedical Assistance Service (TMAS).	.....
5	All rescue boats and lifeboats, whenever released for evacuation, have a device (for ships certified to operate in low air temperature):	
5.1	for transmitting vessel to shore alerts;	.....
5.2	for transmitting signals for location;	.....
5.3	for transmitting and receiving on-scene communications.	……..
6	All other survival craft have a device:	
6.1	for transmitting signals for location; and	.....
6.2	for transmitting and receiving on-scene communications.	……

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that this Record is correct in all respects

Issued at……
(Place of issue of the Record)

…….. ……..
(Date of issue) *(Signature of duly authorized official issuing the Record)*

(Seal or stamp of the issuing authority, as appropriate)

APPENDIX 2

Model table of contents for the Polar Water Operational Manual (PWOM)

SAFETY MEASURES

1 – Operational capabilities and limitations

Chapter 1 Operation in ice

1.1 Operator guidance for safe operation

Guidance: The PWOM should establish the means by which decisions as to whether ice conditions exceed the ship's design limits should be made, taking into account the operational limitations on the Polar Ship Certificate. An appropriate decision support system, such as the Canada's Arctic Ice Regime Shipping System, and/or the Russian Ice Certificate as described in the Rules of Navigation on the water area of the Northern Sea Route, can be used... Bridge personnel should be trained in the proper use of the system to be utilized. For ships that will operate only in ice-free waters, procedures to ensure that will keep the ship from encountering ice should be established.

1.2 Icebreaking capabilities

Guidance: The PWOM should provide information on the ice conditions in which the ship can be expected to make continuous progress. This may be drawn, for example from numerical analysis, model test or from ice trials. Information on the influence of ice strength for new or decayed ice and of snow cover may be included.

1.3 Manoeuvring in ice

1.4 Special features

Guidance: Where applicable, the PWOM should include the results of any equivalency analyses made to determine Polar Ship category/ice class. The manual should also provide information on the use of any specialized systems fitted to assist in ice operations.

Chapter 2 Operation in low air temperatures

2.1 System design

Guidance: The PWOM should list all ship systems susceptible to damage or loss of functionality by exposure to low temperatures, and the measures to be adopted to avoid malfunction.

Chapter 3 Communication and navigation capabilities in high latitudes

Guidance: The PWOM should identify any restrictions to operational effectiveness of communications and navigational equipment that may result from operating in high latitudes.

Chapter 4 Voyage duration

Guidance: The PWOM should provide information on any limitations on ship endurance such as fuel tankage, fresh water capacity, provision stores, etc. This will normally only be a significant consideration for smaller ships, or for ships planning to spend extended periods in ice.

Division 2 – Ship operations

Chapter 1 Strategic planning

Assumptions used in conducting the analyses referred to below should be included in the Manual.

1.1 Avoidance of hazardous ice

Guidance: For ships operating frequently in polar waters, the PWOM should provide information with respect to periods during which the ship should be able to operate for intended areas of operation. Areas that pose particular problems, e.g. chokepoints, ridging, as well as worst recorded ice conditions should be noted. Where the available information is limited or of uncertain quality, this should be recognized and noted as a risk for voyage planning.

1.2 Avoidance of hazardous temperatures

Guidance: For ships operating frequently in polar waters, the PWOM should provide information with respect to, the daily mean daily low temperature as well as the minimum recorded temperature for each of the days during the intended operating period. Where the available information is limited or of uncertain quality, this should be recognized as a risk for voyage planning.

1.3 Voyage duration and endurance

Guidance: Procedures to establish requirements for supplies should be established, and appropriate safety levels for safety margins determined taking into account various scenarios, e.g. slower than expected steaming, course alterations, adverse ice conditions, places of refuge and access to provisions. Sources for and availability of fuel types should be established, taking into account long lead times required for deliveries.

1.4 Human resources management

Guidance: The PWOM should provide guidance for the human resources management, taking into account the anticipated ice conditions and requirements for ice navigation, increased levels of watch keeping, hours of rest, fatigue and a process that ensures that these requirements will be met.

Chapter 2 Arrangements for receiving forecasts of environmental conditions

Guidance: The PWOM should set out the means and frequency for provision of ice and weather information. Where a ship is intended to operate in or in the presence of ice, the manual should set out when weather and ice information is required and the format for the information.

When available, the information should include both global and localized forecasts that will identify weather and ice patterns/regimes that could expose the ship to adverse conditions.

The frequency of updates should provide enough advance notice that the ship can take refuge or use other methods of avoiding the hazard if the conditions are forecast to exceed its capabilities.

The PWOM may include use of a land-based support information provider an effective method of sorting through available information, thereby providing the ship only with information that is relevant, reducing demands on the ship's communications systems. The manual may also indicate instances in which additional images should be obtained and analysed, as well as where such additional information may be obtained.

2.1 Ice information

Guidance: The PWOM should include or refer to guidance on how radar should be used to identify ice floes, how to tune the radar to be most effective, instructions on how to interpret radar images, etc. If other technologies are to be used to provide ice information, their use should also be described.

2.2 Meteorological information

Chapter 3 Verification of hydrographic, meteorological and navigational information

Guidance: The PWOM should provide guidance on the use of hydrographic information as further described in the additional guidance to chapter 10.

Chapter 4 Operation of Special Equipment

4.1 Navigation systems

4.2 Communications systems

Chapter 5 Procedures to maintain equipment and system functionality

5.1 Icing prevention and de-icing

Guidance: The PWOM should provide guidance on how to prevent or mitigate icing by operational means, how to monitor and assess ice accretion, how to conduct de-icing using equipment available on the ship, and how to maintain the safety of the ship and its crew during all of these aspects of the operation.

5.2 Operation of seawater systems

Guidance: The PWOM should provide guidance on how to monitor, prevent or mitigate ice ingestion by seawater systems when operating in ice or in low water temperatures. This may include recirculation, use of low rather than high suctions, etc.

5.3 Procedures for low temperature operations

Guidance: The PWOM should provide guidance on maintaining and monitoring any systems and equipment that are required to be kept active in order to ensure functionality; e.g. by trace heating or continuous working fluid circulation.

Division 3 – Risk management

Chapter 1 Risk mitigation in limiting environmental condition

1.1 Measures to be considered in adverse ice conditions

Guidance: The PWOM should contain guidance for the use of low speeds in the presence of hazardous ice. Procedures should also be set for enhanced watchkeeping and lookout manning in situations with high risks from ice, e.g. in proximity to icebergs, operation at night, and other situations of low visibility. When possibilities for contact with hazardous ice exist, procedures should address regular monitoring, e.g. soundings/inspections of compartments and tanks below the waterline.

1.2 Measures to be considered in adverse temperature conditions

Guidance: The PWOM should contain guidance on operational restrictions in the event that temperatures below the ships polar service temperature are encountered or forecast. These may include delaying the ship, postponing the conduct of certain types of operation, using temporary heating, and other risk mitigation measures.

Chapter 2 Emergency response

Guidance: In general, where the possibility of encountering low air temperatures, sea ice, and other hazards is present, the PWOM should provide guidance on procedures that will increase the effectiveness of emergency response measures.

2.1 Damage control

Guidance: the PWOM should consider damage control measures arrangements for emergency transfer of liquids and access to tanks and spaces during salvage operations.

2.2 Firefighting

2.3 Escape and evacuation

Guidance: Where supplementary or specialized lifesaving equipment is carried to address the possibilities of prolonged durations prior to rescue, abandonment onto ice or adjacent land, or other aspects specific to polar operations, the PWOM should contain guidance on the use of the equipment and provision for appropriate training and drills.

Chapter 3 Coordination with emergency response services

3.1 Ship emergency response

Guidance: The PWOM should include procedures to be followed in preparing for a voyage and in the event of an incident arising.

3.2 Salvage

Guidance: The PWOM should include procedures to be followed in preparing for a voyage and in the event of an incident arising.

3.3 Search and rescue

Guidance: The PWOM should contain information on identifying relevant Rescue Coordination Centres for any intended routes, and should require that contact information and procedures be verified and updated as required as part of any voyage plan.

Chapter 4 Procedures for maintaining life support and ship integrity in the event of prolonged entrapment by ice.

Guidance: Where any ship incorporates special features to mitigate safety or environmental risks due to prolonged entrapment by ice, the PWOM should provide information on how these are to be set up and operated. This may include, for example, adding additional equipment to be run from emergency switchboards, draining systems at risk of damage through freezing, isolating parts of HVAC systems, etc.

4.1 System configuration

4.2 System operation

Division 4 – Joint operations

Chapter 1 Escorted operations

Guidance: The PWOM should contain or reference information on the rules and procedures set out by coastal States who require or offer icebreaking escort services. The manual should also emphasize the need for the master to take account of the ship's limitations in agreeing on the conduct of escort operations.

Chapter 2 Convoy operations

***

ANNEX 11

RESOLUTION MEPC.265(68)
(adopted on15 May 2015)

AMENDMENTS TO THE ANNEX OF THE PROTOCOL OF 1978 RELATING TO THE INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION FOR THE PREVENTION OF POLLUTION FROM SHIPS, 1973

Amendments to MARPOL Annexes I, II, IV and V
(Making the use of the environment-related provisions of the Polar Code mandatory)

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

NOTING article 16 of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto (MARPOL), which specifies the amendment procedure and confers upon the appropriate body of the Organization the function of considering and adopting amendments thereto,

RECOGNIZING the need to provide a mandatory framework for ships operating in polar waters due to the additional demands on ships, their systems and operation, which go beyond the existing requirements of MARPOL, and other relevant binding IMO instruments,

NOTING resolution MEPC.264(68), by which it adopted the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters (Polar Code) with respect to its environment-related provisions,

NOTING ALSO that the Maritime Safety Committee, at its ninety-fourth session, adopted, by resolution MSC.385(94), the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters with respect to its safety-related provisions, and, by resolution MSC.386(94), amendments to the 1974 SOLAS Convention to make the safety-related provisions of the Polar Code mandatory,

HAVING CONSIDERED proposed amendments to MARPOL Annexes I, II, IV and V to make the environment-related provisions of the Polar Code mandatory,

1 ADOPTS, in accordance with article 16(2)(d) of MARPOL, amendments to Annexes I, II, IV and V, the text of which is set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 DETERMINES, in accordance with article 16(2)(f)(iii) of MARPOL, that the amendments shall be deemed to have been accepted on 1 July 2016, unless, prior to that date, not less than one third of the Parties or Parties the combined merchant fleets of which constitute not less than 50% of the gross tonnage of the world's merchant fleet, have communicated to the Organization their objection to the amendments;

3 INVITES the Parties to note that, in accordance with article 16(2)(g)(ii) of MARPOL, the said amendments shall enter into force on 1 January 2017 upon their acceptance in accordance with paragraph 2 above;

4 REQUESTS the Secretary-General, for the purposes of article 16(2)(e) of MARPOL, to transmit certified copies of the present resolution and the text of the amendments contained in the annex to all Parties to MARPOL;

5 REQUESTS FURTHER the Secretary-General to transmit copies of the present resolution and its annex to Members of the Organization which are not Parties to MARPOL.

ANNEX

AMENDMENTS TO MARPOL ANNEXES I, II, IV AND V

ANNEX I
REGULATIONS FOR THE PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY OIL

Chapter 1
General

Regulation 3 – Exemptions and waivers

1 In paragraph 1, the words "or section 1.2 of part II-A of the Polar Code" are inserted between "chapters 3 and 4 of this Annex" and "relating to construction".

2 A new paragraph 5.2.2 is added as follows:

".2 voyages within Arctic waters; or"

3 The existing paragraphs 5.2.2 to 5.2.6 are renumbered as paragraphs 5.2.3 to 5.2.7 and the subparagraphs are renumbered accordingly. In the renumbered paragraphs 5.2.5 and 5.2.6, the referenced paragraph numbers "5.2.2" and "5.2.2.2" are replaced by "5.2.3" and "5.2.3.2", respectively.

4 The chapeau of the renumbered paragraph 5.2.3 is replaced with the following:

".3 voyages within 50 nautical miles from the nearest land outside special areas or Arctic waters where the tanker is engaged in:"

Regulation 4 – Exceptions

5 The chapeau is replaced with the following:

"Regulations 15 and 34 of this Annex and paragraph 1.1.1 of part II-A of the Polar Code shall not apply to:"

Chapter 3
Requirements for machinery spaces of all ships

Part B
Equipment

Regulation 14 – Oil filtering equipment

6 Paragraph 5.1 is replaced with the following:

".1 any ship engaged exclusively on voyages within special areas or Arctic waters, or"

7 In paragraph 5.3.4, between the words "within special areas" and "or has been accepted", the words "or Arctic waters" are inserted.

Part C
Control of discharge of oil

Regulation 15 – Control of discharge of oil

8 At the end of the title for section A, the words "except in Arctic waters" are added.

9 At the end of the title for section C, the words "and Arctic waters" are added.

Chapter 4
Requirements for the cargo area of oil tankers

Part C
Control of operational discharges of oil

Regulation 34 – Control of discharge of oil

10 At the end of the title for section A, the words "except in Arctic waters" are added.

Chapter 6
Reception facilities

Regulation 38 – Reception facilities

11 In paragraph 2.5, the words "and paragraph 1.1.1 of part II-A of the Polar Code" are added after the words "regulations 15 and 34 of this Annex".

12 In paragraph 3.5, the words "and paragraph 1.1.1 of part II-A of the Polar Code" are added after the words "regulation 15 of this Annex".

Chapter 11
International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters

13 A new chapter 11 is added after existing chapter 10 as follows:

"**Chapter 11 – International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters**

Regulation 46 – Definitions

For the purpose of this Annex,

1 Polar Code means the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters, consisting of an introduction, parts I-A and II-A and parts I-B and II-B, adopted by resolutions MSC.385(94) and MEPC.264(68), as may be amended, provided that:

.1 amendments to the environment-related provisions of the introduction and chapter 1 of part II-A of the Polar Code are adopted, brought into force and take effect in accordance with the provisions of article 16 of the present Convention concerning the amendment procedures applicable to an appendix to an annex; and

.2 amendments to part II-B of the Polar Code are adopted by the Marine Environment Protection Committee in accordance with its Rules of Procedure.

2 *Arctic waters* means those waters which are located north of a line from the latitude 58º00´.0 N and longitude 042º00´.0 W to latitude 64º37´.0 N, longitude 035º27´.0 W and thence by a rhumb line to latitude 67º03´.9 N, longitude 026º33´.4 W and thence by a rhumb line to the latitude 70º49´.56 N and longitude 008º59´.61 W (Sørkapp, Jan Mayen) and by the southern shore of Jan Mayen to 73º31'.6 N and 019º01'.0 E by the Island of Bjørnøya, and thence by a great circle line to the latitude 68º38´.29 N and longitude 043º23´.08 E (Cap Kanin Nos) and hence by the northern shore of the Asian Continent eastward to the Bering Strait and thence from the Bering Strait westward to latitude 60º N as far as Il'pyrskiy and following the 60th North parallel eastward as far as and including Etolin Strait and thence by the northern shore of the North American continent as far south as latitude 60º N and thence eastward along parallel of latitude 60º N, to longitude 056º37´.1 W and thence to the latitude 58º00´.0 N, longitude 042º00´.0 W.

3 *Polar waters* means Arctic waters and/or the Antarctic area.

Regulation 47 – Application and requirements

1 This chapter applies to all ships operating in polar waters.

2 Unless expressly provided otherwise, any ship covered by paragraph 1 of this regulation shall comply with the environment-related provisions of the introduction and with chapter 1 of part II-A of the Polar Code, in addition to any other applicable requirements of this Annex.

3 In applying chapter 1 of part II-A of the Polar Code, consideration should be given to the additional guidance in part II-B of the Polar Code."

Appendix II
Form of IOPP Certificate and Supplements

Appendix

Supplement to the international Oil Pollution Prevention Certificate (IOPP Certificate) – Form A

14 A new section 8 is added after existing section 7 as follows:

"8 Compliance with part II-A – chapter 1 of the Polar Code

8.1 The ship is in compliance with additional requirements in the environment-related provisions of the Introduction and section 1.2 of chapter 1 of part II-A of the Polar Code.....□ "

Supplement to the international Oil Pollution Prevention Certificate (IOPP Certificate) – Form B

15 A new section 11 is added after existing section 10 as follows:

"11 Compliance with part II-A – chapter 1 of the Polar Code

11.1 The ship is in compliance with additional requirements in the environment-related provisions of the introduction and section 1.2 of chapter I of part II-A of the Polar Code."

ANNEX II
REGULATIONS FOR THE CONTROL OF POLLUTION OF NOXIOUS LIQUID SUBSTANCES IN BULK

Chapter 1
General

Regulation 3 – Exceptions

1 In the chapeau of paragraph 1, between the words "this Annex" and "shall not apply", the words "and chapter 2 of part II-A of the Polar Code" are inserted.

Chapter 6
Measures of control by port States

Regulation 16 – Measures of control

2 In paragraph 3, the reference to "regulation 13 and of this regulation" is replaced with "regulation 13 and of this regulation, and chapter 2 of part II-A of the Polar Code when the ship is operating in Arctic waters,"

Chapter 10
International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters

3 A new chapter 10 is added after existing chapter 9 as follows:

"**Chapter 10 – International Code for International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters**

Regulation 21 – Definitions

For the purpose of this Annex,

1 *Polar Code* means the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters, consisting of an introduction, part I-A and part II-A and parts I-B and II-B, as adopted by resolutions MSC.385(94) and MEPC.264(68), as may be amended, provided that:

.1 amendments to the environment-related provisions of the introduction and chapter 2 of part II-A of the Polar Code are adopted, brought into force and take effect in accordance with the provisions of article 16 of the present Convention concerning the amendment procedures applicable to an appendix to an annex; and

.2 amendments to part II-B of the Polar Code are adopted by the Marine Environment Protection Committee in accordance with its Rules of Procedure.

2 *Arctic waters* means those waters which are located north of a line from the latitude 58º00´.0 N and longitude 042º00´.0 W to latitude 64º37´.0 N, longitude 035º27´.0 W and thence by a rhumb line to latitude 67º03´.9 N, longitude 026º33´.4 W and thence by a rhumb line to the latitude 70º49´.56 N and longitude 008º59´.61 W (Sørkapp, Jan Mayen) and by the southern shore of Jan

Mayen to 73º31'.6 N and 019º01'.0 E by the Island of Bjørnøya, and thence by a great circle line to the latitude 68º38´.29 N and longitude 043º23´.08 E (Cap Kanin Nos) and hence by the northern shore of the Asian Continent eastward to the Bering Strait and thence from the Bering Strait westward to latitude 60º N as far as Il'pyrskiy and following the 60th North parallel eastward as far as and including Etolin Strait and thence by the northern shore of the North American continent as far south as latitude 60º N and thence eastward along parallel of latitude 60º N, to longitude 056º37´.1 W and thence to the latitude 58º00´.0 N, longitude 042º00´.0 W.

3 *Polar waters* means Arctic waters and/or the Antarctic area.

Regulation 22 – Application and requirements

1 This chapter applies to all ships certified to carry noxious liquid substances in bulk, operating in polar waters.

2 Unless expressly provided otherwise, any ship covered by paragraph 1 of this regulation shall comply with the environment-related provisions of the introduction and with chapter 2 of part II-A of the Polar Code, in addition to any other applicable requirements of this Annex.

3 In applying chapter 2 of part II-A of the Polar Code, consideration should be given to the additional guidance in part II-B of the Polar Code."

Appendix IV
Standard format for the Procedures and Arrangements Manual

Section 1 – Main features of MARPOL Annex II

4 At the end of paragraph 1.3, the following sentence is added:

"In addition, under chapter 2 of part II-A of the Polar Code, more stringent discharge criteria apply in Arctic waters."

Section 4 – Procedures relating to the cleaning of cargo tanks, the discharge of residues, ballasting and deballasting

5 In paragraph 4.4.3, the words "Antarctic area (the sea area south of latitude 60º S)" are replaced with the words "polar waters".

ANNEX IV
REGULATIONS FOR THE PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY SEWAGE FROM SHIPS

Chapter 1
General

Regulation 3 – Exceptions

1 The chapeau of paragraph 1 is replaced with the following:

"1 Regulation 11 of this Annex and section 4.2 of chapter 4 of part II-A of the Polar Code, shall not apply to:"

Chapter 7
International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters

2 A new chapter 7 is added after existing chapter 6 as follows:

"**Chapter 7 – International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters**

Regulation 17 – Definitions

For the purpose of this Annex,

1 *Polar Code* means the International Code for ships operating in polar waters, consisting of an introduction, part I-A and part II-A and parts I-B and II-B, as adopted by resolutions MSC.385(94) and MEPC.264(68), as may be amended, provided that:

.1 amendments to the environment-related provisions of the introduction and chapter 4 of part II-A of the Polar Code are adopted, brought into force and take effect in accordance with the provisions of article 16 of the present Convention concerning the amendment procedures applicable to an appendix to an annex; and

.2 amendments to part II-B of the Polar Code are adopted by the Marine Environment Protection Committee in accordance with its Rules of Procedure.

2 *Antarctic area* means the sea area south of latitude 60º S.

3 *Arctic waters* means those waters which are located north of a line from the latitude 58º00´.0 N and longitude 042º00´.0 W to latitude 64º37´.0 N, longitude 035º27´.0 W and thence by a rhumb line to latitude 67º03´.9 N, longitude 026º33´.4 W and thence by a rhumb line to the latitude 70º49´.56 N and longitude 008º59´.61 W (Sørkapp, Jan Mayen) and by the southern shore of Jan Mayen to 73º31'.6 N and 019º01'.0 E by the Island of Bjørnøya, and thence by a great circle line to the latitude 68º38´.29 N and longitude 043º23´.08 E (Cap Kanin Nos) and hence by the northern shore of the Asian Continent eastward to the Bering Strait and thence from the Bering Strait westward to latitude 60º N as far as Il'pyrskiy and following the 60th North parallel eastward as far as and including Etolin Strait and thence by the northern shore of the North American continent as far south as latitude 60º N and thence eastward along parallel of latitude 60º N, to longitude 056º37´.1 W and thence to the latitude 58º00´.0 N, longitude 042º00´.0 W.

4 *Polar waters* means Arctic waters and/or the Antarctic area.

Regulation 18 – Application and requirements

1 This chapter applies to all ships certified in accordance with this Annex operating in polar waters.

2 Unless expressly provided otherwise, any ship covered by paragraph 1 of this regulation shall comply with the environment-related provisions of the introduction and with chapter 4 of part II-A of the Polar Code, in addition to any other applicable requirements of this Annex."

ANNEX V
REGULATIONS FOR THE PREVENTION OF POLLUTION BY GARBAGE FROM SHIPS

Chapter 1
General

Regulation 3 – General prohibition on discharge of garbage into the sea

1 In paragraph 1, the reference to "regulation 4, 5, 6 and 7 of this Annex" is replaced with "regulation 4, 5, 6 and 7 of this Annex and section 5.2 of part II-A of the Polar Code, as defined in regulation 13.1 of this Annex."

Regulation 7 – Exceptions

2 The chapeau of paragraph 1 is replaced with the following:

"1 Regulations 3, 4, 5 and 6 of this Annex and section 5.2 of chapter 5 of part II-A of the Polar Code shall not apply to:"

3 Paragraph 2.1 is replaced with the following:

".1 The en route requirements of regulations 4 and 6 of this Annex and chapter 5 of part II-A of the Polar Code shall not apply to the discharge of food wastes where it is clear the retention on board of these food wastes presents an imminent health risk to the people on board."

Regulation 10 – Placards, garbage management plans and garbage record keeping

4 In paragraph 1.1, the words "and section 5.2 of part II-A of the Polar Code" are added after the references to "regulations 3, 4, 5 and 6 of this Annex".

Chapter 3
International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters

5 A new chapter 3 is added as follows:

"**Chapter 3 – International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters**
Regulation 13 – Definitions

For the purpose of this Annex,

1 *Polar Code* means the International Code for Ships Operating in Polar Waters, consisting of an introduction, part I-A and part II-A and parts I-B and II-B, as adopted by resolutions MSC.385(94) and MEPC.264(68), as may be amended, provided that:

.1 amendments to the environment-related provisions of the introduction and chapter 5 of part II-A of the Polar Code are adopted, brought into force and take effect in accordance with the provisions of article 16 of the present Convention concerning the amendment procedures applicable to an appendix to an annex; and

.2 amendments to part II-B of the Polar Code are adopted by the Marine Environment Protection Committee in accordance with its Rules of Procedure.

2 *Arctic waters* means those waters which are located north of a line from the latitude 58º00´.0 N and longitude 042º00´.0 W to latitude 64º37´.0 N, longitude 035º27´.0 W and thence by a rhumb line to latitude 67º03´.9 N, longitude 026º33´.4 W and thence by a rhumb line to the latitude 70º49´.56 N and longitude 008º59´.61 W (Sørkapp, Jan Mayen) and by the southern shore of Jan Mayen to 73º31'.6 N and 019º01'.0 E by the Island of Bjørnøya, and thence by a great circle line to the latitude 68º38´.29 N and longitude 043º23´.08 E (Cap Kanin Nos) and hence by the northern shore of the Asian Continent eastward to the Bering Strait and thence from the Bering Strait westward to latitude 60º N as far as Il'pyrskiy and following the 60th North parallel eastward as far as and including Etolin Strait and thence by the northern shore of the North American continent as far south as latitude 60º N and thence eastward along parallel of latitude 60º N, to longitude 056º37´.1 W and thence to the latitude 58º00´.0 N, longitude 042º00´.0 W.

3 *Polar waters* means Arctic waters and/or the Antarctic area.

Regulation 14 – Application and requirements

1 This chapter applies to all ships to which this Annex applies, operating in polar waters.

2 Unless expressly provided otherwise, any ship covered by paragraph 1 of this regulation shall comply with the environment-related provisions of the introduction and with chapter 5 of part II-A of the Polar Code, in addition to any other applicable requirements of this Annex.

3 In applying chapter 5 of part II-A of the Polar Code, consideration should be given to the additional guidance in part II-B of the Polar Code."

Appendix
Form of Garbage Record Book

6 The chapeau of section 4.1.3 is replaced with the following:

"4.1.3 When garbage is discharged into the sea in accordance with regulations 4, 5 or 6 of MARPOL Annex V or chapter 5 of part II-A of the Polar Code:"

***

ANNEX 12

RESOLUTION MEPC.266(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

AMENDMENTS TO THE ANNEX OF THE INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION FOR THE PREVENTION OF POLLUTION FROM SHIPS, 1973, AS MODIFIED BY THE PROTOCOL OF 1978 RELATING THERETO

Amendments to regulation 12 of MARPOL Annex I

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

NOTING article 16 of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto (MARPOL), which specifies the amendment procedure and confers upon the appropriate body of the Organization the function of considering and adopting amendments thereto,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eight session, proposed amendments to MARPOL Annex I concerning requirements for machinery spaces of all ships,

1 ADOPTS, in accordance with article 16(2)(d) of the 1973 Convention, amendments to regulation 12 of Annex I, the text of which is set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 DETERMINES, in accordance with article 16(2)(f)(iii) of MARPOL, that the amendments shall be deemed to have been accepted on 1 July 2016 unless prior to that date, not less than one third of the Parties or Parties the combined merchant fleets of which constitute not less than 50% of the gross tonnage of the world's merchant fleet, have communicated to the Organization their objection to the amendments;

3 INVITES the Parties to note that, in accordance with article 16(2)(g)(ii) of MARPOL, the said amendments shall enter into force on 1 January 2017 upon their acceptance in accordance with paragraph 2 above;

4 REQUESTS the Secretary-General, for the purposes of article 16(2)(e) of MARPOL, to transmit certified copies of the present resolution and the text of the amendments contained in the annex to all Parties to MARPOL;

5 REQUESTS FURTHER the Secretary-General to transmit copies of the present resolution and its annex to Members of the Organization which are not Parties to MARPOL.

ANNEX

AMENDMENTS TO MARPOL ANNEX I

Chapter 3
Requirements for machinery spaces of all ships

Part A
Construction

Regulation 12 – Tanks for oil residues (sludge)

Paragraphs 1 to 4 of regulation 12 are replaced by the following:

"1 Unless indicated otherwise, this regulation applies to every ship of 400 gross tonnage and above except that paragraph 3.5 of this regulation need only be applied as far as is reasonable and practicable to ships delivered on or before 31 December 1979, as defined in regulation 1.28.1.

2 Oil residue (sludge) may be disposed of directly from the oil residue (sludge) tank(s) to reception facilities through the standard discharge connection referred to in regulation 13, or to any other approved means of disposal of oil residue (sludge), such as an incinerator, auxiliary boiler suitable for burning oil residues (sludge) or other acceptable means which shall be annotated in item 3.2 of the Supplement to IOPP Certificate Form A or B.

3 Oil residue (sludge) tank(s) shall be provided and:

.1 shall be of adequate capacity, having regard to the type of machinery and length of voyage, to receive the oil residues (sludge) which cannot be dealt with otherwise in accordance with the requirements of this Annex;

.2 shall be provided with a designated pump that is capable of taking suction from the oil residue (sludge) tank(s) for disposal of oil residue (sludge) by means as described in regulation 12.2;

.3 shall have no discharge connections to the bilge system, oily bilge water holding tank(s), tank top or oily water separators, except that:

.1 the tank(s) may be fitted with drains, with manually operated self-closing valves and arrangements for subsequent visual monitoring of the settled water, that lead to an oily bilge water holding tank or bilge well, or an alternative arrangement, provided such arrangement does not connect directly to the bilge discharge piping system; and

.2 the sludge tank discharge piping and bilge-water piping may be connected to a common piping leading to the standard discharge connection referred to in regulation 13; the connection of both systems to the possible common

piping leading to the standard discharge connection referred to in regulation 13 shall not allow for the transfer of sludge to the bilge system;

.4 shall not be arranged with any piping that has direct connection overboard, other than the standard discharge connection referred to in regulation 13; and

.5 shall be designed and constructed so as to facilitate their cleaning and the discharge of residues to reception facilities.

4 Ships constructed before 1 January 2017 shall be arranged to comply with paragraph 3.3 of this regulation not later than the first renewal survey carried out on or after 1 January 2017."

***

ANNEX 1

RESOLUTION MEPC.259(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

2015 GUIDELINES FOR EXHAUST GAS CLEANING SYSTEMS

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee (the Committee) conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECALLING ALSO that, at its fifty-eighth session, the Committee adopted, by resolution MEPC.176(58), a revised MARPOL Annex VI which significantly strengthens the emission limits for sulphur oxides (SO_X),

RECALLING FURTHER that, at its fifty-ninth session, the Committee adopted, by resolution MEPC.184(59), the *2009 Guidelines for exhaust gas cleaning systems* (hereinafter referred to as "2009 EGCS Guidelines"),

NOTING that the revised MARPOL Annex VI entered into force on 1 July 2010,

NOTING ALSO that regulation 4 of MARPOL Annex VI allows the use of an alternative compliance method at least as effective in terms of emission reductions as that required by MARPOL Annex VI, including any of the standards set forth in regulation 14, taking into account guidelines developed by the Organization,

RECOGNIZING the need to update the 2009 EGCS Guidelines accordingly,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, draft amendments to the 2009 EGCS Guidelines, prepared by the Sub-Committee on Pollution Prevention and Response, at its second session,

1 ADOPTS the *2015 Guidelines for exhaust gas cleaning systems*, as set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 INVITES Administrations to take these Guidelines into account when allowing the use of an exhaust gas cleaning system in accordance with regulation 4 of MARPOL Annex VI;

3 REQUESTS Parties to MARPOL Annex VI and other Member Governments to bring these Guidelines to the attention of shipowners, ship operators, shipbuilders, marine diesel engine manufacturers and any other interested groups;

4 INVITES Administrations to provide for collection of data as described in appendix 3 of these Guidelines;

5 AGREES to keep these Guidelines under review in the light of experience gained with their application;

6 SUPERSEDES the 2009 EGCS Guidelines adopted by resolution MEPC.184(59).

ANNEX

2015 GUIDELINES FOR EXHAUST GAS CLEANING SYSTEMS

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Regulation 14 of Annex VI requires ships to use fuel oil with a sulphur content not exceeding that stipulated in regulations 14.1 or 14.4. Regulation 4 allows, with the approval of the Administration, the use of an alternative compliance method at least as effective in terms of emission reductions as that required by the Annex, including the standards set forth in regulation 14. The Administration of a Party should take into account any relevant guidelines developed by the Organization pertaining to alternatives provided for in regulation 4.

1.2 Similar to a NO_X emission reduction system, an exhaust gas cleaning (EGC) unit may be approved subject to periodic parameter and emission checks or the system may be equipped with a continuous emission monitoring system. These guidelines have been developed with the intention of being objective and performance oriented. Furthermore, use of the SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(%) ratio method will simplify the monitoring of SO_X emission and facilitate approval of an EGC unit. See appendix II for the rationale explaining the use of SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(%) as the basis for system monitoring.

1.3 Compliance should be demonstrated on the basis of the SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(% v/v) ratio values.

Table 1: Fuel oil sulphur limits recorded in regulations 14.1 and 14.4 and corresponding emissions values

Fuel oil sulphur content (% m/m)	Ratio emission SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(% v/v)
4.50	195.0
3.50	151.7
1.50	65.0
1.00	43.3
0.50	21.7
0.10	4.3

Note: The use of the ratio emissions limits is only applicable when using petroleum based distillate or residual fuel oils. See appendix II for application of the ratio method.

1.4 These guidelines are recommendatory in nature, however, Administrations are invited to base the implementation of the relevant requirements of regulation 4 of MARPOL Annex VI on them.

2 GENERAL

2.1 Purpose

2.1.1 The purpose of these guidelines is to specify the requirements for the testing, survey certification and verification of EGC systems under regulation 4 of MARPOL Annex VI to ensure that they provide effective equivalence to the requirements of regulations 14.1 and 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI.

2.1.2 These guidelines permit two schemes: Scheme A (unit certification with parameter and emission checks and Scheme B (continuous emission monitoring with parameter checks).

2.1.3 For ships which are to use an exhaust gas cleaning system in part or in total in order to comply with regulations 14.1 and/or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI, there should be an approved SO_X Emissions Compliance Plan (SECP).

2.2 Application

2.2.1 These guidelines apply to any EGC unit as fitted to fuel oil combustion machinery, excluding shipboard incinerators, installed on board a ship.

2.3 Definitions and required documents

Fuel oil combustion unit	Any engine, boiler, gas turbine, or other fuel oil fired equipment, excluding shipboard incinerators
EGC	Exhaust gas cleaning
SO_X	Sulphur oxides
SO_2	Sulphur dioxide
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
UTC	Universal Time Co-ordinated
Certified Value	The SO_2/CO_2 ratio specified by the manufacturer that the EGC unit is certified as meeting when operating on a continuous basis on the manufacturers specified maximum fuel sulphur content
In situ	Sampling directly within an exhaust gas stream
MCR	Maximum Continuous Rating
Load range	Maximum rated power of diesel engine or maximum steaming rate of the boiler
SECP	SO_X Emissions Compliance Plan
SECC	SO_X Emissions Compliance Certificate
ETM-A	EGC system – Technical Manual for Scheme A
ETM-B	EGC system – Technical Manual for Scheme B
OMM	Onboard Monitoring Manual
EGC Record Book	A record of the EGC unit in-service operating parameters, component adjustments, maintenance and service records as appropriate

Document	Scheme A	Scheme B
SECP	X	X
SECC	X	
ETM Scheme A	X	
ETM Scheme B		X
OMM	X	X
EGC Record Book or Electronic Logging System	X	X

3 SAFETY NOTE

Due attention is to be given to the safety implications related to the handling and proximity of exhaust gases, the measurement equipment and the storage and use of pressurized containers of pure and calibration gases. Sampling positions and permanent access platforms should be such that this monitoring may be performed safely. In locating discharge outlet of washwater used in the EGC unit, due consideration should be given to the location of the

ship's seawater inlet. In all operating conditions the pH should be maintained at a level that avoids damage to the vessel's anti-fouling system, the propeller, rudder and other components that may be vulnerable to acidic discharges, potentially causing accelerated corrosion of critical metal components.

4 SCHEME A – EGC SYSTEM APPROVAL, SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION USING PARAMETER AND EMISSION CHECKS

4.1 Approval of EGC systems

4.1.1 General

Options under Scheme A of these guidelines provide for:

.1 unit approval;

.2 serially manufactured units; and

.3 production range approval.

4.1.2 Unit approval

4.1.2.1 An EGC unit should be certified as capable of meeting the limit value, (the Certified Value), specified by the manufacturer (e.g. the emission level the unit is capable of achieving on a continuous basis) with fuel oils of the manufacturer's specified maximum % m/m sulphur content and for the range of operating parameters, as listed in paragraph 4.2.2.1.2, for which they are to be approved. The Certified Value should at least be suitable for ship operations under requirements given by MARPOL Annex VI regulations 14.1 and/or 14.4.

4.1.2.2 Where testing is not to be undertaken with fuel oils of the manufacturer's specified maximum % m/m sulphur content, the use of two test fuels with a lower % m/m sulphur content is permitted. The two fuels selected should have a difference in % m/m sulphur content sufficient to demonstrate the operational behaviour of the EGC unit and to demonstrate that the Certified Value can be met if the EGC unit were to be operated with a fuel of the manufacturer's specified maximum % m/m sulphur content. In such cases a minimum of two tests, in accordance with section 4.3 as appropriate, should be performed. These need not be sequential and could be undertaken on two different, but identical, EGC units.

4.1.2.3 The maximum and, if applicable, minimum exhaust gas mass flow rate of the unit should be stated. The effect of variation of the other parameters defined in paragraph 4.2.2.1.2 should be justified by the equipment manufacturer. The effect of variations in these factors should be assessed by testing or otherwise as appropriate. No variation in these factors, or combination of variations in these factors, should be such that the emission value of the EGC unit would be in excess of the Certified Value.

4.1.2.4 Data obtained in accordance with this section should be submitted to the Administration for approval together with the ETM-A.

4.1.3 Serially manufactured units

In the case of nominally similar EGC units of the same mass flow ratings as that certified under 4.1.2, and to avoid the testing of each EGC unit, the equipment manufacturer may submit, for acceptance by the Administration, a conformity of production arrangement. The

certification of each EGC unit under this arrangement should be subject to such surveys that the Administration may consider necessary as to assure that each EGC unit has an emission value of not more than the Certified Value when operated in accordance with the parameters defined in paragraph 4.2.2.1.2.

4.1.4 Product range approval

4.1.4.1 In the case of an EGC unit of the same design, but of different maximum exhaust gas mass flow capacities, the Administration may accept, in lieu of tests on an EGC unit of all capacities in accordance with section 4.1.2, tests of EGC systems of three different capacities provided that the three tests are performed at intervals including the highest, lowest and one intermediate capacity rating within the range.

4.1.4.2 Where there are significant differences in the design of EGC units of different capacities, this procedure should not be applied unless it can be shown, to the satisfaction of the Administration, that in practice those differences do not materially alter the performance between the various EGC unit types.

4.1.4.3 For EGC units of different capacities, the sensitivity to variations in the type of combustion machinery to which they are fitted should be detailed together with sensitivity to the variations in the parameters listed in paragraph 4.2.2.1.2. This should be on the basis of testing, or other data as appropriate.

4.1.4.4 The effect of changes of EGC unit capacity on washwater characteristics should be detailed.

4.1.4.5 All supporting data obtained in accordance with this section, together with the ETM-A for each capacity unit, should be submitted to the Administration for approval.

4.2 Survey and certification

4.2.1 Procedures for the certification of an EGC unit

4.2.1.1 In order to meet the requirements of section 4.1 either prior to, or after installation on board, each EGC unit should be certified as meeting the Certified Value specified by the manufacturer (e.g. the emission level the unit is capable of achieving on a continuous basis) under the operating conditions and restrictions as given by the EGC Technical Manual (ETM-A) as approved by the Administration.

4.2.1.2 Determination of the Certified Value should be in accordance with the provisions of these guidelines.

4.2.1.3 Each EGC unit meeting the requirements of paragraph 4.2.1.1 should be issued with a SECC by the Administration. The form of the SECC is given in appendix 1.

4.2.1.4 Application for an SECC should be made by the EGC system manufacturer, shipowner or other party.

4.2.1.5 Any subsequent EGC units of the same design and rating as that certified under paragraph 4.2.1.1 may be issued with an SECC by the Administration without the need for testing in accordance with paragraph 4.2.1.1 subject to section 4.1.3 of these guidelines.

4.2.1.6 EGC units of the same design, but with ratings different from that certified under paragraph 4.2.1.1 may be accepted by the Administration subject to section 4.1.4 of these guidelines.

4.2.1.7 EGC units which treat only part of the exhaust gas flow of the uptake in which they are fitted should be subject to special consideration by the Administration to ensure that under all defined operating conditions that the overall emission value of the exhaust gas downstream of the system is no more than the Certified Value.

4.2.2 EGC System Technical Manual "*Scheme A*" *(ETM-A)*

4.2.2.1 Each EGC unit should be supplied with an ETM-A provided by the manufacturer. This ETM-A should, as a minimum, contain the following information:

.1 the identification of the unit (manufacturer, model/type, serial number and other details as necessary) including a description of the unit and any required ancillary systems;

.2 the operating limits, or range of operating values, for which the unit is certified. These should, as a minimum, include:

.1 maximum and, if applicable, minimum mass flow rate of exhaust gas;

.2 the power, type and other relevant parameters of the fuel oil combustion unit for which the EGC unit is to be fitted. In the cases of boilers, the maximum air/fuel ratio at 100% load should also be given. In the cases of diesel engines whether the engine is of 2 or 4-stroke cycle;

.3 maximum and minimum washwater flow rate, inlet pressures and minimum inlet water alkalinity (ISO 9963-1-2);

.4 exhaust gas inlet temperature ranges and maximum and minimum exhaust gas outlet temperature with the EGC unit in operation;

.5 exhaust gas differential pressure range and the maximum exhaust gas inlet pressure with the fuel oil combustion unit operating at MCR or 80% of power rating whichever is appropriate;

.6 salinity levels or fresh water elements necessary to provide adequate neutralizing agents; and

.7 other factors concerning the design and operation of the EGC unit relevant to achieving a maximum emission value no higher than the Certified Value;

.3 any requirements or restrictions applicable to the EGC unit or associated equipment necessary to enable the unit to achieve a maximum emission value no higher than the Certified Value;

.4 maintenance, service or adjustment requirements in order that the EGC unit can continue to achieve a maximum emission value no higher than the Certified Value. The maintenance, servicing and adjustments should be recorded in the EGC Record Book;

.5 corrective actions in case of exceedances of the applicable maximum allowable SO_2/CO_2 ratio, or wash water discharge criteria;

.6 a verification procedure to be used at surveys to ensure that its performance is maintained and that the unit is used as required (see section 4.4);

.7 through range performance variation in washwater characteristics;

.8 design requirements of the washwater system; and

.9 the SECC.

4.2.2.2 The ETM-A should be approved by the Administration.

4.2.2.3 The ETM-A should be retained on board the ship onto which the EGC unit is fitted and should be available for surveys as required.

4.2.2.4 Amendments to the ETM-A which reflect EGC unit changes that affect performance with respect to emissions to air and/or water should be approved by the Administration. Where additions, deletions or amendments to the ETM-A are separate to the ETM-A as initially approved, they should be retained with the ETM-A and should be considered as part of it.

4.2.3 In-service surveys

4.2.3.1 The EGC unit should be subject to survey on installation and at initial, annual/intermediate and renewals surveys by the Administration.

4.2.3.2 In accordance with regulation 10 of MARPOL Annex VI, EGC units may also be subject to inspection by port State control.

4.2.3.3 Prior to use, each EGC unit should be issued with an SECC by the Administration.

4.2.3.4 Following the installation survey as required by paragraph 4.2.3.1, section 2.6 of the Supplement to the ship's International Air Pollution Certificate should be duly completed.

4.3 Emission limits

4.3.1 Each EGC unit should be capable of reducing emissions to equal to or less than the Certified Value at any load point when operated in accordance with the criteria as given in paragraph 4.2.2.1.2, as specified in paragraphs 4.3.2 to 4.3.5 of these guidelines, and as excepted in paragraph 4.3.7.

4.3.2 EGC units fitted to main propulsion diesel engines should meet the requirements of paragraph 4.3.1 at all loads between 25 to 100% of the load range of the engines to which they are fitted.

4.3.3 EGC units fitted to auxiliary diesel engines should meet the requirements of paragraph 4.3.1 at all loads between 10 to 100% of the load range of the engines to which they are fitted.

4.3.4 EGC units fitted to diesel engines which supply power for both main propulsion and auxiliary purposes should meet the requirements of paragraph 4.3.3.

4.3.5 EGC units fitted to boilers should meet the requirements of paragraph 4.3.1 at all loads between 10 to 100% of the load range (steaming rates) or, if the turn down ratio is smaller, over the actual load range of the boilers to which they are fitted.

4.3.6 In order to demonstrate performance, emission measurements should be undertaken, with the agreement of the Administration, at a minimum of four load points. One load point should be at 95 to 100% of the maximum exhaust gas mass flow rate for which the unit is to be certified. One load point should be within ± 5% of the minimum exhaust gas mass flow rate for which the unit is to be certified. The other two load points should be equally spaced between the maximum and minimum exhaust gas mass flow rates. Where there are discontinuities in the operation of the system the number of load points should be increased, with the agreement of the Administration, so that it is demonstrated that the required performance over the stated exhaust gas mass flow rate range is retained. Additional intermediate load points should be tested if there is evidence of an emission peak below the maximum exhaust gas mass flow rate and above, if applicable, the minimum exhaust gas flow rate. These additional tests should be sufficient number as to establish the emission peak value.

4.3.7 For loads below those specified in paragraphs 4.3.2 to 4.3.5, the EGC unit should continue in operation. In those cases where the fuel oil combustion equipment may be required to operate under idling conditions, the SO_2 emission concentration (ppm) at standardized O_2 concentration (15.0% diesel engines, 3.0% boilers) should not exceed 50 ppm.

4.4 Onboard procedures for demonstrating compliance

4.4.1 For each EGC unit, the ETM-A should contain a verification procedure for use at surveys as required. This procedure should not require specialized equipment or an in-depth knowledge of the system. Where particular devices are required they should be provided and maintained as part of the system. The EGC unit should be designed in such a way as to facilitate inspection as required. The basis of this verification procedure is that if all relevant components and operating values or settings are within those as approved, then the performance of the EGC system is within that required without the need for actual exhaust emission measurements. It is also necessary to ensure that the EGC unit is fitted to a fuel oil combustion unit for which it is rated – this forms part of the SECP. A Technical File related to an EIAPP certificate, if available, or an Exhaust Gas Declaration issued by the engine maker or designer or another competent party or a Flue Gas Declaration issued by the boiler maker or designer or another competent party serves this purpose to the satisfaction of the Administration.

4.4.2 Included in the verification procedure should be all components and operating values or settings which may affect the operation of the EGC unit and its ability to meet the Certified Value.

4.4.3 The verification procedure should be submitted by the EGC system manufacturer and approved by the Administration.

4.4.4 The verification procedure should cover both a documentation check and a physical check of the EGC unit.

4.4.5 The surveyor should verify that each EGC unit is installed in accordance with the ETM-A and has an SECC as required.

4.4.6 At the discretion of the Administration, the surveyor should have the option of checking one or all of the identified components, operating values or settings. Where there is more than one EGC unit, the Administration may, at its discretion, abbreviate or reduce the extent of the survey on board, however, the entire survey should be completed for at least one of each type of EGC unit on board provided that it is expected that the other EGC units perform in the same manner.

4.4.7 The EGC unit should include means to automatically record when the system is in use. This should automatically record, at least at the frequency specified in paragraph 5.4.2, as a minimum, washwater pressure and flow rate at the EGC unit's inlet connection, exhaust gas pressure before and pressure drop across the EGC unit, fuel oil combustion equipment load, and exhaust gas temperature before and after the EGC unit. The data recording system should comply with the requirements of sections 7 and 8. In case of a unit consuming chemicals at a known rate as documented in ETM-A, records of such consumption in the EGC Record Book also serves this purpose.

4.4.8 Under Scheme A, if a continuous exhaust gas monitoring system is not fitted, it is recommended that a daily spot check of the exhaust gas quality in terms of SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(%) ratio, is used to verify compliance in conjunction with parameter checks stipulated in paragraph 4.4.7. If a continuous exhaust gas monitoring system is fitted, only daily spot checks of the parameters listed in paragraph 4.4.7 would be needed to verify proper operation of the EGC unit.

4.4.9 If the EGC system manufacturer is unable to provide assurance that the EGC unit will meet the Certified Value or below between surveys, by means of the verification procedure stipulated in paragraph 4.4.1, or if this requires specialist equipment or in-depth knowledge, it is recommended that continuous exhaust gas monitoring of each EGC unit be used, Scheme B, to assure compliance with regulations 14.1 and/or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI.

4.4.10 An EGC Record Book should be maintained by the shipowner recording maintenance and service of the unit including like-for-like replacement. The form of this record should be submitted by the EGC system manufacturer and approved by the Administration. This EGC Record Book should be available at surveys as required and may be read in conjunction with engine-room log-books and other data as necessary to confirm the correction operation of the EGC unit. Alternatively, this information should be recorded in the vessel's planned maintenance record system as approved by the Administration.

5 SCHEME B – EGC SYSTEM APPROVAL, SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION USING CONTINUOUS MONITORING OF SO_X EMISSIONS

5.1 General

This Scheme should be used to demonstrate that the emissions from a fuel oil combustion unit fitted with an EGC will, with that system in operation, result in the required emission value (e.g. as stated in the SECP) or below at any load point, including during transient operation and thus compliance with the requirements of regulations 14.1 and/or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI.

5.2 Approval

Compliance demonstrated in service by continuous exhaust gas monitoring. Monitoring system should be approved by the Administration and the results of that monitoring available to the Administration as necessary to demonstrate compliance as required.

5.3 Survey and certification

5.3.1 The monitoring system of the EGC system should be subject to survey on installation and at initial, annual/intermediate and renewals surveys by the Administration.

5.3.2 In accordance with regulation 10 of MARPOL Annex VI, monitoring systems of EGC units may also be subject to inspection by port State control.

5.3.3 In those instances where an EGC system is installed, section 2.6 of the Supplement to the ship's International Air Pollution Prevention Certificate should be duly completed.

5.4 Calculation of emission rate

5.4.1 Exhaust gas composition in terms of SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(%) should be measured at an appropriate position after the EGC unit and that measurement should be in accordance with the requirements of section 6 as applicable.

5.4.2 SO_2(ppm) and CO_2(%) to be continuously monitored and recorded onto a data recording and processing device at a rate which should not be less than 0.0035 Hz.

5.4.3 If more than one analyser is to be used to determine the SO_2/CO_2 ratio, these should be tuned to have similar sampling and measurement times and the data outputs aligned so that the SO_2/CO_2 ratio is fully representative of the exhaust gas composition.

5.5 Onboard procedures for demonstrating compliance with emission limit

5.5.1 The data recording system should comply with the requirements of sections 7 and 8.

5.5.2 Daily spot checks of the parameters listed in paragraph 4.4.7 are needed to verify proper operation of the EGC unit and should be recorded in the EGC Record Book or in the engine-room logger system.

5.6 EGC System Technical Manual "Scheme B" (ETM-B)

5.6.1 Each EGC unit should be supplied with an ETM-B provided by the manufacturer. This ETM-B should, as a minimum, contain the following information:

.1 the identification of the unit (manufacturer, model/type, serial number and other details as necessary) including a description of the unit and any required ancillary systems;

.2 the operating limits, or range of operating values, for which the unit is certified. These should, as a minimum, include:

.1 maximum and, if applicable, minimum mass flow rate of exhaust gas;

.2 the power, type and other relevant parameters of the fuel oil combustion unit for which the EGC unit is to be fitted. In the cases of boilers, the maximum air/fuel ratio at 100% load should also be given. In the cases of diesel engines whether the engine is of 2 or 4-stroke cycle;

.3 maximum and minimum washwater flow rate, inlet pressures and minimum inlet water alkalinity (ISO 9963-1-2);

.4 exhaust gas inlet temperature ranges and maximum and minimum exhaust gas outlet temperature with the EGC unit in operation;

.5 exhaust gas differential pressure range and the maximum exhaust gas inlet pressure with the fuel oil combustion unit operating at MCR or 80% of power rating whichever is appropriate;

.6 salinity levels or fresh water elements necessary to provide adequate neutralizing agents; and

.7 other parameters as necessary concerning the operation of the EGC unit;

.3 any requirements or restrictions applicable to the EGC unit or associated equipment;

.4 corrective actions in case of exceedances of the applicable maximum allowable SO_2/CO_2 ratio, or washwater discharge criteria;

.5 through range performance variation in washwater characteristics;

.6 design requirements of the washwater system.

5.6.2 The ETM-B should be approved by the Administration.

5.6.3 The ETM-B should be retained on board the ship onto which the EGC unit is fitted. The ETM-B should be available for surveys as required.

5.6.4 Amendments to the ETM-B which reflect EGC unit changes that affect performance with respect to emissions to air and/or water should be approved by the Administration. Where additions, deletions or amendments to the ETM-B are separate to the ETM-B as initially approved, they should be retained with the ETM-B and should be considered as part of it.

6 EMISSION TESTING

6.1 Emission testing should follow the requirements of the NO_X Technical Code 2008, chapter 5, and associated appendices, except as provided for in these guidelines.

6.2 CO_2 should be measured using an analyser operating on non-dispersive infrared (NDIR) principle and with additional equipment such as dryers as necessary. SO_2 should be measured using analysers operating on non-dispersive infrared (NDIR) or non-dispersive ultra-violet (NDUV) principles and with additional equipment such as dryers as necessary. Other systems or analyser principles may be accepted, subject to the approval of the Administration, provided they yield equivalent or better results to those of the equipment referenced above. For acceptance of other CO_2 systems or analyser principles, the reference method should be in accordance with the requirements of appendix III of the NO_X Technical Code 2008.

6.3 Analyser performance should be in accordance with the requirements of sections 1.6 to 1.10 of appendix III of the NO_X Technical Code 2008.

6.4 An exhaust gas sample for SO_2 should be obtained from a representative sampling point downstream of the EGC unit.

6.5 SO_2 and CO_2 should be monitored using either in situ or extractive sample systems.

6.6 Extractive exhaust gas samples for SO_2 determination should be maintained at a sufficient temperature to avoid condensed water in the sampling system and hence loss of SO_2.

6.7 If an extractive exhaust gas sample for determination needs to be dried prior to analysis it should be done in a manner that does not result in loss of SO_2 in the sample as analysed.

6.8 The SO_2 and CO_2 values should be compared on the basis of the same residual water content (e.g. dry or with the same wetness fraction).

6.9 In justified cases where the CO_2 concentration is reduced by the EGC unit, the CO_2 concentration can be measured at the EGC unit inlet, provided that the correctness of such a methodology can be clearly demonstrated. In such cases the SO_2 and CO_2 values should be compared on a dry basis. If measured on a wet basis the water content in the exhaust gas stream at those points should also be determined in order to correct the readings to dry basis values. For calculation of the CO_2 value on a dry basis, the dry/wet correction factor may be calculated in accordance with paragraph 5.12.3.2.2 of the NO_X Technical Code 2008.

7 DATA RECORDING AND PROCESSING DEVICE

7.1 The recording and processing device should be of robust, tamper-proof design with read-only capability.

7.2 The recording and processing device should record the data required by sections 4.4.7, 5.4.2, and 10.3 against UTC and ships position by a Global Navigational Satellite System (GNSS).

7.3 The recording and processing device should be capable of preparing reports over specified time periods.

7.4 Data should be retained for a period of not less than 18 months from the date of recording. If the unit is changed over that period, the shipowner should ensure that the required data is retained on board and available as required.

7.5 The device should be capable of downloading a copy of the recorded data and reports in a readily useable format. Such copy of the data and reports should be available to the Administration or port State authority as requested.

8 ONBOARD MONITORING MANUAL (OMM)

8.1 An OMM should be prepared to cover each EGC unit installed in conjunction with fuel oil combustion equipment, which should be identified, for which compliance is to be demonstrated.

8.2 The OMM should, as a minimum, include:

.1 the sensors to be used in evaluating EGC system performance and washwater monitoring, their service, maintenance and calibration requirements;

.2 the positions from which exhaust emission measurements and washwater monitoring are to be taken together with details of any necessary ancillary services such as sample transfer lines and sample treatment units and any related service or maintenance requirements;

.3 the analysers to be used, their service, maintenance, and calibration requirements;

.4 analyser zero and span check procedures; and

.5 other information or data relevant to the correct functioning of the monitoring systems or its use in demonstrating compliance.

8.3 The OMM should specify how the monitoring is to be surveyed.

8.4 The OMM should be approved by the Administration.

9 SHIP COMPLIANCE

9.1 SO_X Emissions Compliance Plan (SECP)

9.1.1 For all ships which are to use an EGC unit, in part or in total, in order to comply with the requirements of regulations 14.1 and 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI there should be an SECP for the ship, approved by the Administration.

9.1.2 The SECP should list each item of fuel oil combustion equipment which is to meet the requirements for operating in accordance with the requirements of regulations 14.1 and/or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI.

9.1.3 Under Scheme A, the SECP should present how continuous monitoring data will demonstrate that the parameters in paragraph 4.4.7 are maintained within the manufacturer's recommended specifications. Under Scheme B, this would be demonstrated using daily recordings of key parameters.

9.1.4 Under Scheme B, the SECP should present how continuous exhaust gas emissions monitoring will demonstrate that the ship total SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(%) ratio is comparable to the requirements of regulation 14.1 and/or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI or below as prescribed in paragraph 1.3. Under Scheme A, this would be demonstrated using daily exhaust gas emission recordings.

9.1.5 There may be some equipment such as small engines and boilers to which the fitting of EGC units would not be practical, particularly where such equipment is located in a position remote from the main machinery spaces. All such fuel oil combustion units should be listed in the SECP. For these fuel oil combustion units which are not to be fitted with EGC units, compliance may be achieved by means of regulations 14.1 and/or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI.

9.2 Demonstration of compliance

9.2.1 Scheme A

9.2.1.1 The SECP should refer to, not reproduce, the ETM-A, EGC Record Book or Engine-Room logger system and OMM as specified under Scheme A. It should be noted that as an alternative, the maintenance records may be recorded in the ship's planned maintenance record system, as allowed by the Administration.

9.2.1.2 For all fuel oil combustion equipment listed under paragraph 9.1.2, details should be provided demonstrating that the rating and restrictions for the EGC unit as approved, paragraph 4.2.2.1.2, are complied with.

9.2.1.3 Required parameters should be monitored and recorded as required under paragraph 4.4.7 when the EGC is in operation in order to demonstrate compliance.

9.2.2 Scheme B

The SECP should refer to, not reproduce, the ETM-B, EGC Record Book or Engine-Room logger system and OMM as specified under Scheme B.

10 WASHWATER

10.1 Washwater discharge criteria[1]

10.1.1 When the EGC system is operated in ports, harbours, or estuaries, the washwater monitoring and recording should be continuous. The values monitored and recorded should include pH, PAH, turbidity and temperature. In other areas the continuous monitoring and recording equipment should also be in operation, whenever the EGC system is in operation, except for short periods of maintenance and cleaning of the equipment. The discharge water should comply with the following limits.

10.1.2 pH criteria

10.1.2.1 The washwater pH should comply with one of the following requirements which should be recorded in the ETM-A or ETM-B as applicable:

.1 The discharge washwater should have a pH of no less than 6.5 measured at the ship's overboard discharge with the exception that during manoeuvring and transit, the maximum difference between inlet and outlet of 2 pH units is allowed measured at the ship's inlet and overboard discharge.

.2 The pH discharge limit, at the overboard monitoring position, is the value that will achieve as a minimum pH 6.5 at 4 m from the overboard discharge point with the ship stationary, and which is to be recorded as the overboard pH discharge limit in the ETM-A or ETM-B. The overboard pH discharge limit can be determined either by means of direct measurement, or by using a calculation-based methodology (computational fluid dynamics or other equally scientifically established empirical formulae) to be left to the approval by the Administration, and in accordance with the following conditions to be recorded in the ETM-A or ETM-B:

.1 all EGC units connected to the same outlets are operating at their full loads (or highest practicable load) and with the fuel oil of a maximum sulphur content for which the units are to be certified (Scheme A) or used with (Scheme B);

[1] The washwater discharge criteria should be revised in the future as more data becomes available on the contents of the discharge and its effects, taking into account any advice given by GESAMP.

.2 if a test fuel with lower sulphur content, and/or test load lower than maximum, sufficient for demonstrating the behaviour of the washwater plume is used, the plume's mixing ratio must be established based on the titration curve of seawater. The mixing ratio would be used to demonstrate the behaviour of the washwater plume and that the overboard pH discharge limit has been met if the EGC system is operated at the highest fuel sulphur content and load for which the EGC system is certified (Scheme A) or used with (Scheme B);

.3 where the washwater flow rate is varied in accordance with the EGC system gas flow rate, the implications of this for the part load performance should also be evaluated to ensure that the overboard pH discharge limit is met under any load;

.4 reference should be made to a sea-water alkalinity of 2,200 µmol/litre and pH 8.2[2]; an amended titration curve should be applied where the testing conditions differ from the reference seawater, as agreed by the Administration; and

.5 if a calculation-based methodology is to be used, details to allow its verification such as but not limited to supporting scientific formulae, discharge point specification, washwater discharge flow rates, designed pH values at both the discharge and 4 m location, titration and dilution data should be submitted.

10.1.3 PAHs (Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons)

10.1.3.1 The washwater PAH should comply with the following requirements. The appropriate limit should be specified in the ETM-A or ETM-B.

10.1.3.2 The maximum continuous PAH concentration in the washwater should not be greater than 50 µg/L PAH_{phe} (phenanthrene equivalence) above the inlet water PAH concentration. For the purposes of this criteria, the PAH concentration in the washwater should be measured downstream of the water treatment equipment, but upstream of any washwater dilution or other reactant dosing unit, if used, prior to discharge.

10.1.3.3 The 50 µg/L limit described above is normalized for a washwater flow rate through the EGC unit of 45 t/MWh where the MW refers to the MCR or 80% of the power rating of the fuel oil combustion unit. This limit would have to be adjusted upward for lower washwater flow rates per MWh, and vice-versa, according to the table below.

Flow rate (t/MWh)	**Discharge concentration limit (µg/L PAH_{phe} equivalents)**	**Measurement technology**
0-1	2250	Ultraviolet light
2.5	900	– " –
5	450	Fluorescence[3]
11.25	200	– " –
22.5	100	– " –
45	50	– " –
90	25	– " –

[2] These values could be revised within two years for new installations following the adoption of these amended guidelines upon further inputs on the physical state of the seas resulting from the use of exhaust gas cleaning systems.

[3] For any Flow Rate > 2.5 t/MWh Fluorescence technology should be used.

10.1.3.4 For a 15-minute period in any 12-hour period, the continuous PAH_{phe} concentration limit may exceed the limit described above by up to 100%. This would allow for an abnormal start-up of the EGC unit.

10.1.4 Turbidity/Suspended Particle Matter

10.1.4.1 The washwater turbidity should comply with the following requirements. The limit should be recorded in the ETM-A or ETM-B.

10.1.4.2 The washwater treatment system should be designed to minimize suspended particulate matter, including heavy metals and ash.

10.1.4.3 The maximum continuous turbidity in washwater should not be greater than 25 FNU (formazin nephlometric units) or 25 NTU (nephlometric turbidity units) or equivalent units, above the inlet water turbidity. However, during periods of high inlet turbidity, the precision of the measurement device and the time lapse between inlet measurement and outlet measurement are such that the use of a difference limit is unreliable. Therefore all turbidity difference readings should be a rolling average over a 15-minute period to a maximum of 25 FNU. For the purposes of this criteria the turbidity in the washwater should be measured downstream of the water treatment equipment but upstream of washwater dilution (or other reactant dosing) prior to discharge.

10.1.4.4 For a 15-minute period in any 12-hour period, the continuous turbidity discharge limit may be exceeded by 20%.

10.1.5 Nitrates

10.1.5.1 The washwater treatment system should prevent the discharge of nitrates beyond that associated with a 12% removal of NO_X from the exhaust, or beyond 60 mg/l normalized for washwater discharge rate of 45 tons/MWh whichever is greater.

10.1.5.2 At each renewal survey nitrate discharge data is to be available in respect of sample overboard discharge drawn from each EGC system with the previous three months prior to the survey. However, the Administration may require an additional sample to be drawn and analysed at their discretion. The nitrate discharge data and analysis certificate is to be retained on board the ship as part of the EGC Record Book and be available for inspection as required by port State control or other parties. Requirements in respect of sampling, storage, handling and analysis should be detailed in the ETM-A or ETM-B as applicable. To assure comparable nitrate discharge rate assessment, the sampling procedures should take into account paragraph 10.1.5.1, which specifies the need for washwater flow normalization. The test method for the analysis of nitrates should be according to standard seawater analysis as described in Grasshoff et al.

10.1.5.3 All systems should be tested for nitrates in the discharge water. If typical nitrate amounts are above 80% of the upper limit, it should be recorded in the ETM-A or ETM-B.

10.1.6 Washwater additives and other substances

An assessment of the washwater is required for those EGC technologies which make use of chemicals, additives, preparations or create relevant chemicals in situ. The assessment could take into account relevant guidelines such as the *Procedure for approval of ballast water management systems that make use of active substances (G9)* (resolution MEPC.126(53)), and, if necessary, additional washwater discharge criteria should be established.

10.2 Washwater monitoring

10.2.1 pH, oil content (as measured by PAH levels), and turbidity should be continuously monitored and recorded as recommended in section 7 of these guidelines. The monitoring equipment should also meet the performance criteria described below:

pH

10.2.2 The pH electrode and pH meter should have a resolution of 0.1 pH units and temperature compensation. The electrode should comply with the requirements defined in BS 2586 or of equivalent or better performance and the meter should meet or exceed BS EN ISO 60746-2:2003.

PAH

10.2.3 The PAH monitoring equipment should be capable to monitor PAH in water in a range to at least twice the discharge concentration limit given in the table above. The equipment should be demonstrated to operate correctly and not deviate more than 5% in washwater with turbidity within the working range of the application.

10.2.4 For those applications discharging at lower flow rates and higher PAH concentrations, ultraviolet light monitoring technology or equivalent, should be used due to its reliable operating range.

Turbidity

10.2.5 The turbidity monitoring equipment should meet requirements defined in ISO 7027:1999 or USEPA 180.1.

10.3 Washwater monitoring data recording

The data recording system should comply with the requirements of sections 7 and 8 and should continuously record pH, PAH and Turbidity as specified in the washwater criteria.

10.4 Washwater residue

10.4.1 Residues generated by the EGC unit should be delivered ashore to adequate reception facilities. Such residues should not be discharged to the sea or incinerated on board.

10.4.2 Each ship fitted with an EGC unit should record the storage and disposal of washwater residues in an EGC log, including the date, time and location of such storage and disposal. The EGC log may form a part of an existing log-book or electronic recording system as approved by the Administration.

APPENDIX 1

FORM OF SO_X EMISSION COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATE

Badge or Cipher

NAME OF ADMINISTRATION

SO_X EMISSION COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATE

CERTIFICATE OF UNIT APPROVAL FOR EXHAUST GAS CLEANING SYSTEMS

Issued under the provisions of the Protocol of 1997, as amended by resolution MEPC.176(58) in 2008, to amend the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 related thereto under the authority of the Government of:

.....
(full designation of the country)

by.....
(full designation of the competent person or organization authorized under the provisions of the Convention)

This is to certify that the exhaust gas cleaning (EGC) unit listed below has been surveyed in accordance with the requirements of the specifications contained under Scheme A in the *2015 Guidelines for exhaust gas cleaning systems* adopted by resolution MEPC.259(68).

This Certificate is valid only for the EGC unit referred to below:

Unit manufacturer	Model/ type	Serial number	EGC System Unit and Technical Manual approval number

A copy of this Certificate, together with the EGC System Technical Manual, shall be carried on board the ship fitted with this EGC System unit at all times.

This Certificate is valid for the life of the EGC System unit, subject to surveys in accordance with section 4.2 of the guidelines and regulation 5 of MARPOL Annex VI, installed in ships under the authority of this Government.

Issued at .....
(place of issue of certificate)

dd/mm/yyyy

....
(date of issue) (*signature of duly authorized official issuing the certificate)*

(Seal or Stamp of the authority, as appropriate)

APPENDIX 2

PROOF OF THE SO_2/CO_2 RATIO METHOD

1 The SO_2/CO_2 ratio method enables direct monitoring of exhaust gas emissions to verify compliance with emissions limits set out in table 1 in paragraph 1.3 of these guidelines. In the case of EGC systems that absorb CO_2 during the exhaust gas cleaning process it is necessary to measure the CO_2 prior to the cleaning process and use the CO_2 concentration before cleaning with the SO_2 concentration after cleaning. For conventional low alkali cleaning systems virtually no CO_2 is absorbed during exhaust gas cleaning and therefore monitoring of both gases can be undertaken after the cleaning process.

2 Correspondence between the SO_2/CO_2 ratio can be determined by simple inspection of the respective carbon contents per unit mass of distillate and residual fuel. For this group of hydrocarbon fuels the carbon content as a percentage of mass remains closely similar, whereas the hydrogen content differs. Thus it can be concluded that for a given carbon consumption by combustion there will be a consumption of sulphur in proportion to the sulphur content of the fuel, or in other words a constant ratio between carbon and sulphur adjusted for the molecular weight of oxygen from combustion.

3 The first development of the SO_2/CO_2 ratio considered its use to verify compliance with emissions from 1.5% sulphur fuel. The limit of 65 (ppm[4]/%) SO_2/CO_2 for 1.5% sulphur in fuel can be demonstrated by first calculating the mass ratio of fuel sulphur to fuel carbon, which is tabulated in table 1 in this appendix for various fuels and fuel sulphur contents; including 1.5% sulphur for both distillate and residual fuels. These ratios were used to solve for the corresponding SO_2 and CO_2 concentrations in exhaust, which are tabulated in table 2 of this appendix. Molecular weights (MW) were taken into account to convert mass fractions to mole fractions. For the 1.5% sulphur fuels in table 2, the amount of CO_2 is set first at 8% and then changed to 0.5% to show that there is no effect due to changes in excess air. As expected, the absolute SO_2 concentration changes, but the SO_2/CO_2 ratio does not. This indicates that the SO_2/CO_2 ratio is independent of fuel-to-air ratios. Therefore, SO_2/CO_2 ratio can be used robustly at any point of operation, including operation where no brake power is produced.

3.1 Note that the SO_2/CO_2 ratio varies slightly from distillate to residual fuel. This occurs because of the very different atomic hydrogen-to-carbon ratios (H:C) of the two fuels. Figure 1 illustrates the extent of the SO_2/CO_2 ratios' sensitivity to H:C over a broad range of H:C and fuel sulphur concentrations. From Figure 1, it can be concluded that for fuel sulphur levels less than 3.0% sulphur, the difference in S/C ratios for distillate and residual fuel is less than 5.0%.

3.2 In the case of using non-petroleum fuel oils, the appropriate SO_2/CO_2 ratio applicable to the values given in regulations 14.1 and/or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI will be subject to approval by the Administration.

[4] ppm means "parts per million". It is assumed that ppm is measured by gas analysers on a molar basis, assuming ideal gas behaviour. The technically correct units are actually micro-moles of substance per mole of total amount (μmol/mol), but ppm is used in order to be consistent with units in the NO_x Technical Code.

Table 1: Fuel properties for marine distillate and residual fuel*

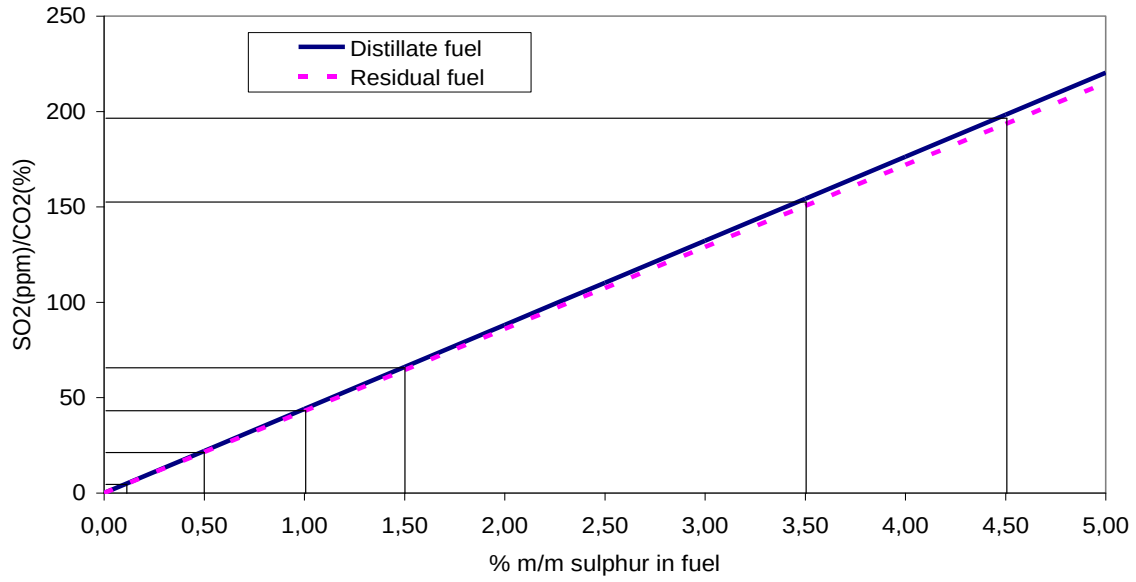
	Carbon	Hydrogen	Sulphur	Other	C	H	S	Fuel S/C	Exh SO_2/CO_2
Fuel Type	%(m/m)	%(m/m)	%(m/m)	%(m/m)	mol/kg	mol/kg	mol/kg	mol/mol	ppm/%(v/v)
Distillate	86.20	13.60	0.17	0.03	71.8333	136	0.0531	0.00074	7.39559
Residual	86.10	10.90	2.70	0.30	71.7500	109	0.8438	0.01176	117.5958
Distillate	85.05	13.42	1.50	0.03	70.8750	134.2	0.4688	0.006614	66.1376
Residual	87.17	11.03	1.50	0.30	72.6417	110.3	0.4688	0.006453	64.5291

* Based on properties in the IMO NO_x Monitoring Guidelines, resolution MEPC.103(49).

Table 2: Emissions calculations corresponding to 1.5 % fuel sulphur

	CO_2	SO_2	Exh SO_2/CO_2	Exh S/C
	%	ppm[4]	ppm[4]/%	m/m
Distillate 0.17% S	8	59.1	7.4	0.00197
Residual 2.70% S	8	939.7	117.5	0.03136
Distillate 1.5% S	8	528.5	66.1	0.01764
Residual 1.5% S	8	515.7	64.5	0.01721
Distillate 1.5% S	0.5	33.0	66.1	0.01764
Residual 1.5% S	0.5	32.2	64.5	0.01721

SO_2/CO_2 ratio vs % sulphur in fuel



4 Correspondence between 65 (ppm[4]/%) SO_2/CO_2 and 6.0 g/kWh is demonstrated by showing that their S/C ratios are similar. This requires the additional assumption of a brake-specified fuel consumption value of 200 g/kWh. This is an appropriate average for marine diesel engines. The calculation is as follows:

$$S/C_{fuel} = \frac{\text{brake-specific } SO_2 \times (MW_S / MW_{SO2})}{\text{BSFC} \times (\%\text{ carbon in fuel} / 100)}$$

brake-specific SO_2 = 6.0 g/kW-hr

MW_S = 32.065 g/mol

MW_{SO2} = 64.064 g/mol

BSFC = 200 g/kW-hr

% carbon in 1.5% sulphur fuel (from table 1) = 85.05% (distillate) or 87.17% (residual)

$$S/C_{residual\ fuel} = \frac{6.0 \times (32.065 / 64.064)}{200 \times (87.17\% / 100)} = 0.01723$$

$$S/C_{distillate\ fuel} = \frac{6.0 \times (32.065 / 64.064)}{200 \times (85.05\% / 100)} = 0.01765$$

Note 1: The S/C mass ratios calculated above, based on 6.0 g/kWh and 200 g/kWh BSFC, are both within 0.10% of the S/C mass ratios in the emissions table (Table 2). Therefore, 65 (ppm[4]/%) SO_2/CO_2 corresponds well to 6.0 g/kWh.

Note 2: The value of 6.0 g/kWh, hence the 200g/kWh brake-specified fuel consumption is taken from MARPOL Annex VI as adopted by the 1997 MARPOL Conference.

5 Thus, the working formulas are as follows:

$$\text{For complete combustion} = \frac{SO_2\ (ppm^*)}{CO_2\ (\%^*)} \leq 65$$

$$\text{For complete combustion} = \frac{SO_2\ (ppm^*)}{CO_2\ (\%^*) + (CO(ppm^*)/10000) + (THC(ppm^*)/10000)} \leq 65$$

* Note: gas concentrations must be sampled or converted to the same residual water content (e.g., fully wet, fully dry).

6 The following is the basis of using the (ppm[4]/%) SO_2/CO_2 as the limit for determining compliance with regulation 14.1 or 14.4 of MARPOL Annex VI:

.1 This limit can be used to determine compliance from fuel oil burners that do not produce mechanical power.

.2 This limit can be used to determine compliance at any power output, including idle.

.3 This limit only requires two gas concentration measurements at one sampling location.

.4 There is no need to measure any engine parameters such as engine speed, engine torque, engine exhaust flow, or engine fuel flow.

.5 If both gas concentration measurements are made at the same residual water content in the sample (e.g., fully wet, fully dry), no dry-to-wet conversion factors are required in the calculation.

.6 This limit completely decouples the thermal efficiency of the fuel oil combustion unit from the EGC unit.

.7 No fuel properties need to be known.

.8 Because only two measurements are made at a single location, transient engine or EGCS unit effects can be minimized by aligning signals from just these two analysers. (Note that the most appropriate points to align are the points where each analyser responds to a step change in emissions at the sample probe by 50% of the steady-state value.)

.9 This limit is independent of the amount of exhaust gas dilution. Dilution may occur due to evaporation of water in an EGC unit, and as part of an exhaust sampler's preconditioning system.

APPENDIX 3

WASHWATER DATA COLLECTION

1 The washwater discharge criteria are intended to act as initial guidance for implementing EGC system designs. The criteria should be revised in the future as more data becomes available on the contents of the discharge and its effects, taking into account any advice given by GESAMP.

2 Administrations should therefore provide for collection of relevant data. To this end, shipowners in conjunction with the EGC manufacturer are requested to sample and analyse samples of:

- inlet water (for background);
- water after the scrubber (but before any treatment system); and
- discharge water.

3 This sampling could be made during approval testing or shortly after commissioning and at about twelve-month intervals for a period of two years of operation (minimum of three samples). Sampling guidance and analysis should be undertaken by laboratories using EPA or ISO test procedures for the following parameters:

- pH
- PAH and oil (detailed GC-MS analysis)
- Nitrate
- Nitrite
- Cd
- Cu
- Ni
- Pb
- Zn
- As
- Cr
- V

4 The extent of laboratory testing may be varied or enhanced in the light of developing knowledge.

5 When submitting sample data to the Administration, information should also be included on washwater discharge flow rates, dilution of discharge, if applicable, and engine power should be included as well as specifications of the fuel used from the bunker delivery note as a minimum.

6 It is recommended that the ship that has provided this information to the satisfaction of the Administration should be granted a waiver for compliance of the existing installation(s) to possible future stricter washwater discharge standards. The Administration should forward information submitted on this issue to the Organization for dissemination by the appropriate mechanisms.

***

ANNEX 2

RESOLUTION MEPC.260(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2011 GUIDELINES ADDRESSING ADDITIONAL ASPECTS TO THE NO_X TECHNICAL CODE 2008 WITH REGARD TO PARTICULAR REQUIREMENTS RELATED TO MARINE DIESEL ENGINES FITTED WITH SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION (SCR) SYSTEMS (RESOLUTION MEPC.198(62))

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee (the Committee) conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECALLING ALSO that, at its fifty-eighth session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.176(58), a revised MARPOL Annex VI (hereinafter referred to as "MARPOL Annex VI") and, by resolution MEPC.177(58), a revised Technical Code on Control of Emission of Nitrogen Oxides from Marine Diesel Engines (hereinafter referred to as "the NO_X Technical Code 2008"),

NOTING regulation 13 of MARPOL Annex VI which makes the NO_X Technical Code 2008 mandatory under that Annex,

NOTING ALSO that the use of NO_x-reducing devices is envisaged in the NO_X Technical Code 2008 and that selective catalytic reduction systems (hereinafter referred to as "SCR systems") are such NO_X-reducing devices for compliance with the Tier III NO_x limit,

NOTING FURTHER that, at its sixty-second session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.198(62), the *2011 Guidelines addressing additional aspects to the NO_X Technical Code 2008 with regard to particular requirements related to marine diesel engines fitted with Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) Systems* (hereinafter "the 2011 Guidelines"),

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, draft amendments to the 2011 Guidelines, proposed by the Sub-Committee on Pollution Prevention and Response, at its second session,

1 ADOPTS amendments to the *2011 Guidelines addressing additional aspects to the NO_X Technical Code 2008 with regard to particular requirements related to marine diesel engines fitted with Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) Systems*, as set out at annex to the present resolution;

2 INVITES Administrations to take the aforementioned amendments into account when certifying engines fitted with SCR systems;

3 REQUESTS Parties to MARPOL Annex VI and other Member Governments to bring the amendments to the attention of shipowners, ship operators, shipbuilders, marine diesel engine manufacturers and any other interested groups;

4 AGREES to keep the 2011 Guidelines, as amended, under review in light of the experience gained with their application.

ANNEX

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2011 GUIDELINES ADDRESSING ADDITIONAL ASPECTS TO THE NO_X TECHNICAL CODE 2008 WITH REGARD TO PARTICULAR REQUIREMENTS RELATED TO MARINE DIESEL ENGINES FITTED WITH SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION (SCR) SYSTEMS (RESOLUTION MEPC.198(62))

A new paragraph 6.1.2 is added as follows:

> "6.1.2 The calculation of gaseous emissions in paragraph 6.1.1.1 of these guidelines should be undertaken in accordance with paragraph 5.2.1 of these guidelines."

***

ANNEX 6

RESOLUTION MEPC.261(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2014 GUIDELINES ON SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION OF THE ENERGY EFFICIENCY DESIGN INDEX (EEDI) (RESOLUTION MEPC.254(67))

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECALLING ALSO that, at its sixty-second session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.203(62), *Amendments to the Annex of the Protocol of 1997 to amend the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto* (inclusion of regulations on energy efficiency for ships in MARPOL Annex VI),

NOTING that the aforementioned amendments to MARPOL Annex VI entered into force on 1 January 2013,

NOTING ALSO that regulation 5 (Surveys) of MARPOL Annex VI, as amended, requires ships to which chapter 4 applies shall also be subject to survey and certification taking into account guidelines developed by the Organization,

NOTING FURTHER that, at its sixty-third session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.214(63), *2012 Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI)*, which were further amended at its sixty-fifth session, by resolution MEPC.234(65),

NOTING FURTHER that, at its sixty-seventh session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.254(67), *2014 Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI)*,

RECOGNIZING that the amendments to MARPOL Annex VI require the adoption of relevant guidelines for the smooth and uniform implementation of the regulations and to provide sufficient lead time for industry to prepare,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, draft amendments to the *2014 Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI)*,

1 ADOPTS amendments to the *2014 Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI)*, as set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 INVITES Administrations to take the aforementioned amendments into account when developing and enacting national laws which give force to and implement provisions set forth in regulation 5 of MARPOL Annex VI, as amended;

3 ENDORSES the use of ISO standard 15016:2105 for ships for which the sea trial is conducted on or after 1 September 2015 and encourages the application of the standard prior to that date;

4 REQUESTS the Parties to MARPOL Annex VI and other Member Governments to bring the amendments to the attention of shipowners, ship operators shipbuilders, ship designers and any other interested groups;

5 AGREES to keep these guidelines, as amended, under review in light of the experience gained with their application.

ANNEX

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2014 GUIDELINES ON SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION OF THE ENERGY EFFICIENCY DESIGN INDEX (EEDI) (RESOLUTION MEPC.254(67))

1 Paragraphs 4.3.5 and 4.3.6 are replaced with the following:

"4.3.5 Sea conditions should be measured in accordance with ITTC Recommended Procedure 7.5-04-01-01.1 Speed and Power Trials Part 1; 2014 or ISO 15016:2015."

4.3.6 Ship speed should be measured in accordance with ITTC Recommended Procedure 7.5-04-01-01.1 Speed and Power Trials Part 1; 2014 or ISO 15016:2015, and at more than two points of which range includes the power of the main engine as specified in paragraph 2.5 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines."

2 Paragraphs 4.3.8 and 4.3.9 are replaced with the following:

"4.3.8 The submitter should develop power curves based on the measured ship speed and the measured output of the main engine at sea trial. For the development of the power curves, the submitter should calibrate the measured ship speed, if necessary, by taking into account the effects of wind, current, waves, shallow water, displacement, water temperature and water density in accordance with ITTC Recommended Procedure 7.5-04-01-01.2 Speed and Power Trials Part 2; 2014 or ISO 15016:2015. Upon agreement with the shipowner, the submitter should submit a report on the speed trials including details of the power curve development to the verifier for verification.

4.3.9 The submitter should compare the power curves obtained as a result of the sea trial and the estimated power curves at the design stage. In case differences are observed, the attained EEDI should be recalculated, as necessary, in accordance with the following:

.1 for ships for which sea trial is conducted under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines: the attained EEDI should be recalculated using the measured ship speed at sea trial at the power of the main engine as specified in paragraph 2.5 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines; and

.2 for ships for which sea trial cannot be conducted under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines: if the measured ship speed at the power of the main engine as specified in paragraph 2.5 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines at the sea trial conditions is different from the expected ship speed on the power curve at the corresponding condition, the shipbuilder should recalculate the attained EEDI by adjusting ship speed under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines by an appropriate correction method that is agreed by the verifier.

An example of scheme of conversion from trial condition to EEDI condition at EEDI power is given as follows:

V_{ref} is obtained from the results of the sea trials at trial condition using the speed-power curves predicted by the tank tests. The tank tests shall be carried out at both draughts: trial condition corresponding to that of the S/P trials and EEDI condition. For trial conditions the power ratio α_P between model test prediction and sea trial result is calculated for constant ship speed. Ship speed from model test prediction for EEDI condition at EEDI power multiplied with α_P is V_{ref}.

$$\alpha_P = \frac{P_{Trial,P}}{P_{Trial,S}}$$

where:

$P_{Trial,P}$: power at trial condition predicted by the tank tests

$P_{Trial,S}$: power at trial condition obtained by the S/P trials

α_p: power ratio

Figure 2 shows an example of scheme of the conversion to derive the resulting ship speed at EEDI condition (V_{ref}) at EEDI power.

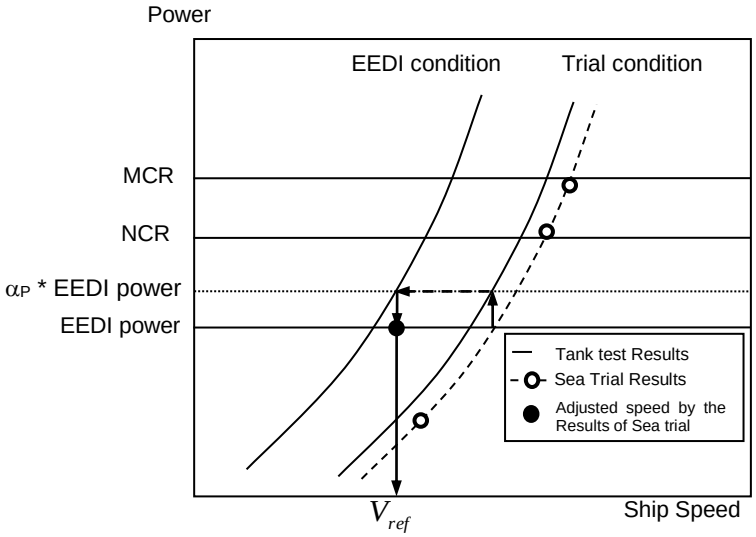


Figure 2: An example of scheme of conversion from trial condition to EEDI condition at EEDI power

Note: Further consideration would be necessary for speed adjustment methodology in paragraph 4.3.9.2 of these guidelines. One of the concerns relates to a possible situation where the power curve for sea trial condition is estimated in an excessively conservative manner (i.e. power curve is shifted in a leftward direction) with the intention to get an upward adjustment of the ship speed by making the measured ship speed at sea trial easily exceed the lower-estimated speed for sea trial condition at design stage."

***

ANNEX 7

RESOLUTION MEPC.262(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2013 INTERIM GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING MINIMUM PROPULSION POWER TO MAINTAIN THE MANOEUVRABILITY OF SHIPS IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS (RESOLUTION MEPC.232(65), AS AMENDED BY RESOLUTION MEPC.255(67))

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECALLING ALSO that, at its sixty-second session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.203(62), Amendments to the annex of the Protocol of 1997 to amend the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto (inclusion of regulations on energy efficiency for ships in MARPOL Annex VI),

NOTING that the aforementioned amendments to MARPOL Annex VI entered into force on 1 January 2013,

NOTING ALSO that regulation 21.5 of MARPOL Annex VI, as amended, requires that the installed propulsion power shall not be less than the propulsion power needed to maintain the manoeuvrability of the ship under adverse conditions as defined in guidelines to be developed by the Organization,

NOTING FURTHER that, at its sixty-fifth session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.232(65), the *2013 Interim guidelines for determining minimum propulsion power to maintain the manoeuvrability of ships in adverse conditions* (the interim guidelines) and, at its sixty-seventh session, by resolution MEPC.255(67), amendments thereto,

RECOGNIZING that the amendments to MARPOL Annex VI require the adoption of relevant guidelines for the smooth and uniform implementation of the regulations and to provide sufficient lead time for industry to prepare,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, proposed amendments to the interim guidelines,

1 ADOPTS amendments to the *2013 Interim guidelines for determining minimum propulsion power to maintain the manoeuvrability of ships in adverse conditions*, as amended, as set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 INVITES Administrations to take the aforementioned amendments into account when developing and enacting national laws which give force to and implement provisions set forth in regulation 21.5 of MARPOL Annex VI, as amended;

3 REQUESTS the Parties to MARPOL Annex VI and other Member Governments to bring the amendments to the attention of shipowners, ship operators, shipbuilders, ship designers and any other interested groups;

4 AGREES to keep the interim guidelines, as amended, under review, in light of experience gained with their application.

ANNEX

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2013 INTERIM GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING MINIMUM PROPULSION POWER TO MAINTAIN THE MANOEUVRABILITY OF SHIPS IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS (RESOLUTION MEPC.232(65), AS AMENDED BY RESOLUTION MEPC.255(67))

Appendix – Assessment procedures to maintain the manoeuvrability under adverse conditions, applicable during phase 0 and phase 1 of the EEDI implementation

Table 1 in paragraph 2 is replaced as follows:

"

Table 1: Parameters a and b for determination of the minimum power line values for the different ship types

Ship type	**a**	**b**
Bulk carrier which DWT is less than 145,000	0.0763	3374.3
Bulk carrier which DWT is 145,000 and over	0.0490	7329.0
Tanker	0.0652	5960.2
Combination Carrier	see tanker above	

"

***

ANNEX 8

RESOLUTION MEPC.263(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2014 GUIDELINES ON THE METHOD OF CALCULATION OF THE ATTAINED ENERGY EFFICIENCY DESIGN INDEX (EEDI) FOR NEW SHIPS (RESOLUTION MEPC.245(66))

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee (the Committee) conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECALLING ALSO that, at its sixty-second session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.203(62), *Amendments to the annex of the Protocol of 1997 to amend the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973, as modified by the Protocol of 1978 relating thereto* (inclusion of regulations on energy efficiency for ships in MARPOL Annex VI),

NOTING that the aforementioned amendments to MARPOL Annex VI entered into force on 1 January 2013,

NOTING ALSO that regulation 20 (Attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (attained EEDI)) of MARPOL Annex VI, as amended, requires that the EEDI shall be calculated taking into account guidelines developed by the Organization,

NOTING FURTHER the *2012 Guidelines on the method of calculation of the attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships*, adopted at its sixty-third session by resolution MEPC.212(63), and the amendments thereto, adopted at its sixty-fourth session by resolution MEPC.224(64),

NOTING FURTHER that, at its sixty-sixth session, it adopted, by resolution MEPC.245(66), *2014 Guidelines on the method of calculation of the attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships*,

RECOGNIZING that the amendments to MARPOL Annex VI require relevant guidelines for the smooth and uniform implementation of the regulations and to provide sufficient lead time for industry to prepare,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, proposed amendments to the *2014 Guidelines on the method of calculation of the attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships*,

1 ADOPTS amendments to the *2014 Guidelines on the method of calculation of the attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships*, as set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 INVITES Administrations to take the aforementioned amendments into account when developing and enacting national laws which give force to and implement provisions set forth in regulation 20 of MARPOL Annex VI, as amended;

3 REQUESTS the Parties to MARPOL Annex VI and other Member Governments to bring the amendments to the attention of shipowners, ship operators, shipbuilders, ship designers and any other interested parties;

4 AGREES to keep these guidelines, as amended, under review, in the light of experience gained with their implementation.

ANNEX

AMENDMENTS TO THE 2014 GUIDELINES ON THE METHOD OF CALCULATION OF THE ATTAINED ENERGY EFFICIENCY DESIGN INDEX (EEDI) FOR NEW SHIPS (RESOLUTION MEPC.245(66))

Paragraph 2.6 is replaced with the following:

".6 V_{ref}, *Capacity* and *P* should be consistent with each other. As for LNG carriers having diesel electric or steam turbine propulsion systems, V_{ref} is the relevant speed at 83% of MPP_{Motor} or $MCR_{SteamTubine}$ respectively. "

***

ANNEX 13

RESOLUTION MEPC.267(68)
(adopted on15 May 2015)

AMENDMENTS TO THE REVISED GUIDELINES FOR THE IDENTIFICATION AND DESIGNATION OF PARTICULARLY SENSITIVE SEA AREAS (RESOLUTION A.982(24))

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee (the Committee) conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECALLING ALSO that, at its twenty-fourth session, the Assembly adopted, by resolution A.982(24), the *Revised guidelines for the Identification and Designation of Particularly Sensitive Sea Areas* (hereinafter referred to as the PSSA Guidelines),

NOTING that the Assembly requested the Marine Environment Protection Committee and the Maritime Safety Committee to keep the PSSA Guidelines under review,

NOTING ALSO that, at its twenty-eighth session, the Assembly, by resolution A.1087(28), adopted the *2013 Guidelines for the Designation of Special Areas under MARPOL*, following amendments to MARPOL Annex IV that include the possibility of establishing "Special Areas" for the prevention of pollution from passenger ships,

RECOGNIZING the need to effect, as a result of the adoption of the *2013 Guidelines for the Designation of Special Areas under MARPOL*, consequential amendments to the PSSA Guidelines,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, proposed amendments to the PSSA Guidelines,

1 ADOPTS the *Amendments to the Revised guidelines for the Identification and Designation of Particularly Sensitive Sea Areas*, as set out in the annex to the present resolution;

2 INVITES Administrations to take the annexed amendments into account when applying the PSSA Guidelines.

ANNEX

AMENDMENTS TO THE REVISED GUIDELINES FOR THE IDENTIFICATION AND DESIGNATION OF PARTICULARLY SENSITIVE SEA AREAS

1 INTRODUCTION

1 The third sentence of paragraph 1.1 is replaced with the following:

"In a continuing effort to provide a clearer understanding of the concepts set forth in the guidelines, the Assembly adopted resolutions A.885(21), A.927(22) and A.982(24)."

6 ASSOCIATED PROTECTIVE MEASURES

2 Paragraph 6.1.1 is replaced with the following:

"designation of an area as a Special Area under MARPOL Annexes I, II, IV or V, or an emission control area under MARPOL Annex VI, or application of special discharge restrictions to vessels operating in a PSSA. Procedures and criteria for the designation of Special Areas are contained in the *2013 Guidelines for the Designation of Special Areas under MARPOL*, set forth in the annex to resolution A.1087(28). Criteria and procedures for the designation of emission control areas are contained in Appendix 3 to MARPOL Annex VI;"

***

ANNEX 14

RESOLUTION MEPC.268(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

DESIGNATION OF THE SOUTH-WEST CORAL SEA AS AN EXTENSION OF THE GREAT BARRIER REEF AND TORRES STRAIT PARTICULARLY SENSITIVE SEA AREA

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

BEING AWARE of the ecological, social, cultural, economic and scientific attributes of the south-west Coral Sea, as well as its vulnerability to damage by international shipping activities and the steps taken by the Government of Australia to address that vulnerability,

NOTING the *Revised guidelines for the Identification and Designation of Particularly Sensitive Sea Areas* (PSSA Guidelines), adopted by the Assembly by resolution A.982(24), and the *Revised Guidance Document for submission of PSSA proposals to IMO* (MEPC.1/Circ.510),

RECALLING resolution MEPC.133(53), by which the Torres Strait (TS) was designated as an extension of the Great Barrier Reef (GBR) Particularly Sensitive Sea Area (PSSA),

HAVING CONSIDERED the proposal made by the Government of Australia to extend the GBR and TS PSSA to include the south-west part of the Coral Sea,

HAVING AGREED, at its sixty-eighth session, that the criteria for the identification and designation of a PSSA provided in resolution A.982(24) are fulfilled for the extension of the GBR and TS PSSA to include the south-west part of the Coral Sea,

HAVING NOTED that the Sub-Committee on Navigation, Communications and Search and Rescue (NCSR), at its second session, approved the establishment of two 5 nautical mile wide two-way routes and a new area to be avoided in the south-west Coral Sea as associated protective measures for the application to extend the GBR and TS PSSA to include the south-west part of the Coral Sea to improve the safety of navigation and the protection of the marine environment,

1 DESIGNATES the south-west part of the Coral Sea, as defined in annex 1 to the present resolution, as an extension of the Great Barrier Reef and Torres Strait PSSA pending the final adoption of the associated protective measures for the PSSA, as set out in annex 1 of document NCSR 2/23;

2 INVITES Member Governments to recognize the ecological, social, cultural, economic and scientific attributes of the Coral Sea area, set forth in annex 2 to the present resolution, as well as its vulnerability to damage by international shipping activities, as described in annex 3 to the present resolution;

3 FURTHER INVITES Member Governments to note the associated protective measures established to address the area's vulnerability, the details of which are contained in annex 4 to the present resolution, which are expected to enter into force following final adoption by the ninety-fifth session of the Maritime Safety Committee, on a date to be circulated by the Organization to all Member Governments, and request ships flying their flag to act in accordance with such measures.

ANNEX 1

DESCRIPTION OF THE GREAT BARRIER REEF, TORRES STRAIT AND CORAL SEA PARTICULARLY SENSITIVE SEA AREA[1]

Description of the Particularly Sensitive Sea Area

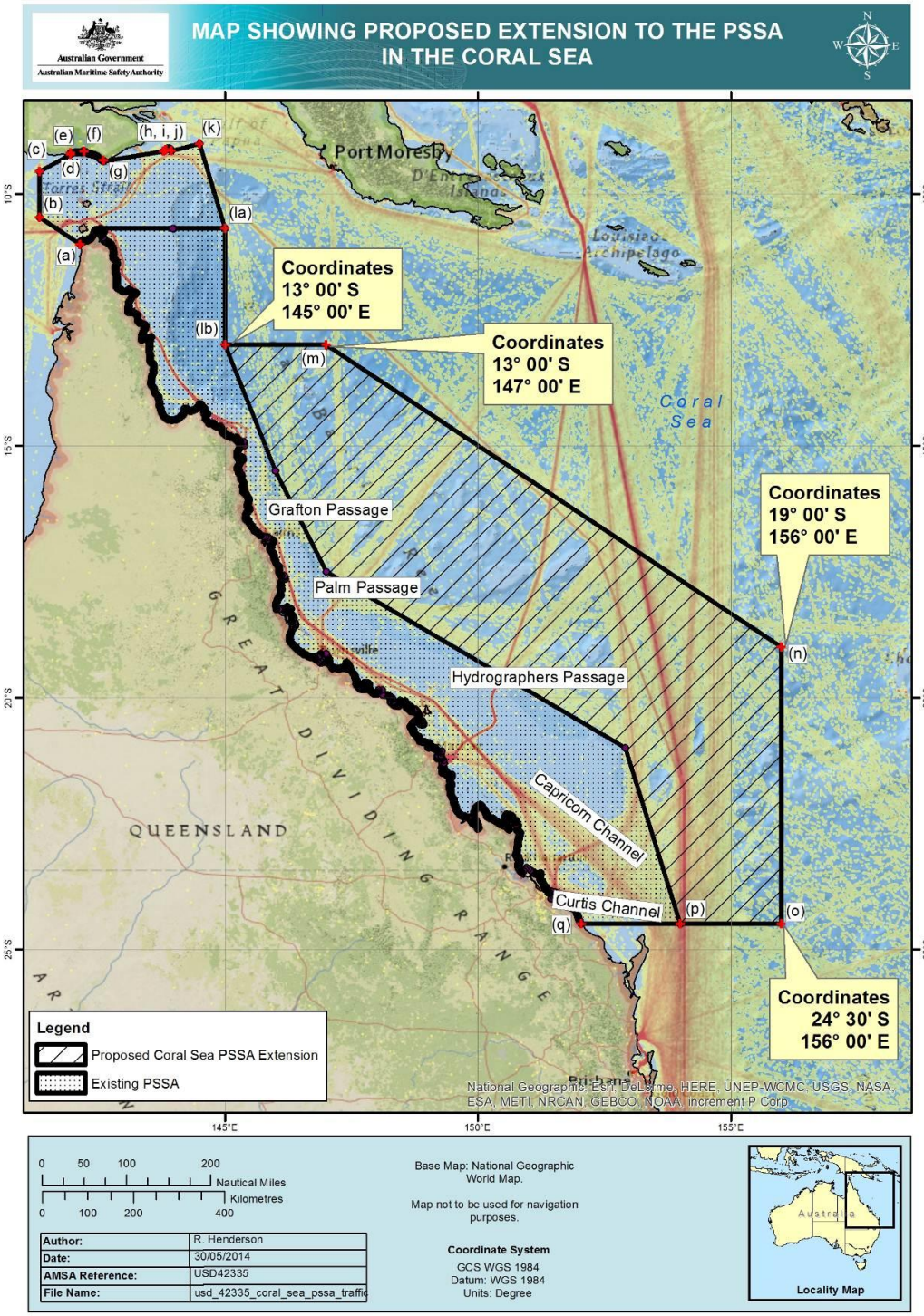
To minimize the risk of damage from ship groundings and pollution damage by international shipping activities and the destruction and degradation of this unique, diverse, and significant habitats and ecosystem, mariners should exercise extreme care when navigating in the area bounded by a line connecting the following geographical positions which is designated as a Particularly Sensitive Sea Area:

(a) commencing at a point on the coast of Australia in latitude 11°00' South, longitude 142°08' East;
(b) running thence north-westerly along the geodesic to the point of latitude 10°28' South, longitude 141°20' East;
(c) thence north along the meridian of longitude 141°20' East to its intersection by the parallel point of latitude 9°33' South;
(d) thence north-easterly along the geodesic to the point of latitude 9°13' South, longitude 141°57' East;
(e) thence north along the meridian of longitude 141°57' East to its intersection by the southern coastline of the island of Papua New Guinea at low water;
(f) thence generally easterly along the southern coastline of the island of New Guinea, that is along the low water line on that coast and across any river mouth and in the case of the mouth of the Mai Kussa River along the parallel of latitude 9°09' South, thence along the southern coastline of the island of New Guinea, that is along the low water line on that coast and across any river mouth to its intersection by the meridian of longitude 142°36' East;
(g) thence south along that meridian to its intersection by the parallel of latitude 9°21' South;
(h) thence north-easterly along the geodesic between that point of intersection and the point of latitude 9°09' South, longitude 143°47'20" East;
(i) thence along the outer limit of the three-mile territorial sea of Black Rocks, so as to pass to the north-west of Black Rocks, to the point of intersection of that limit by the outer limit of the three-mile territorial sea of Bramble Cay;
(j) thence along that outer limit, so as to pass successively to the north and east of Bramble Cay, to the point of latitude 9°08'30" South, longitude 143°55'57" East;
(k) thence north-easterly to the point of latitude 9°00' South, longitude 144°30' East;
(l) thence generally southerly along a line joining the following geographic positions:
    a. 10°41' S 145°00' E
    b. 13°00' S 145°00' E
(m) thence easterly to a point of latitude 13°00' South, longitude 147°00' East;
(n) thence generally south-easterly to a point of latitude 19°00' South, longitude 156°00' East;
(o) thence south to a point of latitude 24°30' South, longitude 156°00' East;
(p) thence westerly along the parallel of latitude 24°30' South to its intersection by the coastline of Queensland at low water; and
(q) thence generally northerly along that coastline at low water to the point of commencement.

[1] The text in this annex is taken from Australia's submission contained in document MEPC 68/10/1.

Note: The geographic positions from sections (a) to (k) inclusive are those in resolution MEPC.133(53), adopted in 2005 to define the Great Barrier Reef and Torres Strait Particularly Sensitive Sea Area.

All coordinates are based on the WGS84 datum and are depicted in the diagram in the chartlet below.



ANNEX 2

ECOLOGICAL, SOCIO-ECONOMIC, AND SCIENTIFIC ATTRIBUTES OF THE PSSA EXTENSION AREA: SOUTH-WEST CORAL SEA

(Note: More detailed descriptions of the ecological, socio-economic and cultural, scientific and educational criteria are contained in paragraphs 17 to 80 of document MEPC 68/10/1.)

1 Ecological criteria

Uniqueness or rarity

1.1 The Coral Sea is considered one of the most distinctive and undisturbed natural systems in the world and is internationally recognized for its rich biodiversity, unique species and important heritage values.

1.2 In the area of the Coral Sea to be covered by the PSSA, three large-scale unique ecological features that support distinct or important ecological communities at a regional scale are present. The Queensland and Marion Plateaux, together support over 20 coral reefs and cays, which provide complex habitats with diverse and abundant invertebrate and fish communities. Similarly, the northernmost parts of the Tasmantid Seamount Chain contain a diverse range of habitats, including deep-water sponge gardens and near-pristine tropical coral reef systems. Collectively these are known to be biological hot-spots, with significant species diversity.

1.3 Over millennia, the geological and oceanographic history of the region and its warm and cool current patterns have prevented the migration of species, prompting the development of flora and fauna that evolved, adapted and spread in isolation. Localized currents can act as a barrier to dispersal; as a result the area has high levels of species endemism.

1.4 The area contains some of the world's most unique and globally significant marine species, such as the leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea)*, humphead Maori wrasse (*Cheilinus undulatus*) and nautilus (*Nautilus pompilius)*.

1.5 The Coral Sea provides migratory corridors for cetaceans, sharks, fish, turtles and seabirds, many of which are of conservation concern. Successive research efforts have highlighted the significance of the Coral Sea in patterns of dispersal, whereby the reefs provide a series of dispersal stepping-stones from the western Pacific towards the GBR.

1.6 Deep, cold water troughs and abyssal basins are habitat for an array of benthic species, many of which are a protected matter under Australia's *Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999 (*EPBC Act) or international agreement or are unique to the area, including 18 endemic species of deep-water sharks, rays and chimaera fish.

1.7 The remoteness and challenging environment of the area means much of its biodiversity remains undescribed and new species found nowhere else are routinely discovered. Surveys in the deeper reef habitats at Osprey Reef have revealed prehistoric six-gilled sharks, giant oil fish and many crustaceans and unidentified fish at depths of 1400 metres. A unique, dwarf speciation of *Nautilus pompilius* was also identified on Osprey Reef. This species evolved isolated from nautilus in the nearby Coral Sea and GBR, and is a reflection of the endemic nature of ecosystems within the area.

1.8 The north-western Coral Sea hosts the only confirmed spawning aggregation of black marlin (*Makaira indica*) in the world. This species migrates throughout the Pacific Ocean, but only uses the Coral Sea to spawn.

1.9 The few detailed surveys undertaken have shown that as many as 405% of the invertebrates inhabiting seamounts in the area are new to science while up to 34% of the species may be endemic. Scientists expect that research into the lesser known, deeper areas of the region will uncover many new species.

Critical habitat

1.10 The area contains outstanding examples of reef communities and a diverse array of isolated sandy cays, islands, deep-sea plains, seamounts and canyons. Collectively, these areas provide foraging, breeding and nesting grounds for a rich array of marine species, including 341 species that are recognized for their conservation significance under the EPBC Act and under international agreements. This includes 26 species of cetaceans, 219 species of corals, 21 species of fish, 46 species of sharks and rays, five species of marine turtles and 24 species of birds. Many of these species are listed as threatened or migratory species, or both, and, whilst over half of these species show declining population trends worldwide, many are still found at healthy levels in the Coral Sea.

Dependency

1.11 The reefs of Coral Sea provide stepping-stones for the dispersal of species between the GBR and the greater Pacific Ocean region. Maintaining the overall integrity and resilience of these reefs is therefore necessary to ensure that they can function effectively as stepping-stone habitats.

1.12 The Coral Sea also provides migratory corridors for cetaceans, sharks, fish, turtles and seabirds, many of which are of conservation concern. There are likely to be further important areas for feeding, breeding, migrating and resting that have yet to be clearly identified, and which may act as critical habitat for many species.

1.13 Thousands of species rely on the ecosystem processes within the Coral Sea region to provide opportunities for foraging, breeding and migration. These processes are largely driven by the availability of energy within the system, which in turn is dependent upon the unique interactions between the region's oceanographic and topographic features.

1.14 Localized turbulence in the lee of reefs, islands and seamounts influences biological communities by creating patches of high to intermediate productivity in the nutrient-poor open-water environment. These sites of enhanced productivity are important aggregators for a range of pelagic species including small fish, mid-trophic predatory fish and large predators. They are also known to attract a range of species of conservation concern including marine turtles, marine mammals and seabirds.

1.15 Cays in the area offer important habitat for seabirds to roost and nest, and turtles to lay eggs above the high tide mark. Seabirds provide the main source of energy on these cays, through their nutrient-rich guano, eggs and carrion, which support food webs of terrestrial and intertidal invertebrates and over time facilitate the development of soil and organic matter, which in turn provides habitat for more complex plant communities.

1.16 The species assemblage and trophic structure of the region relies on the highly interlinked web of local oceanographic patterns, topography and energy inputs. An impact on any one of these can disrupt this web, destabilizing ecosystem processes and the species that rely on them.

Representativeness

1.17 The reefs, cays and herbivorous fish of the Queensland and Marion Plateaux and the northern extent of the Tasmantid Seamount Chain highlight the biological significance and ecological value of the region.

1.18 The Queensland and Marion Plateaux are considered important for aggregations of marine life and the high levels of biodiversity they support. The reefs and islands of these plateaux are approximately 200–400 kilometres from the coast and provide for diverse and abundant invertebrate (e.g. sea cucumber) and fish communities.

1.19 These reefs of the Queensland and Marion Plateaux are known for their particularly high densities of shark species, and Osprey Reef in particular is also recognized for its populations of the iconic humphead Maori wrasse and nautilus. The lagoons of these reefs are important nursery sites for sharks and predatory fish, while the island areas support critical nesting sites for the green turtle and a range of seabird species. The plateaux also abut two significant deep-water regions: the Queensland Trough, which separates the Queensland Plateau from the GBR, and the Townsville Trough, which separates the two plateaux from each other. These troughs contain canyons and gullies that are likely to support unique deep-water ecosystems.

Diversity

1.20 The reef systems in the Coral Sea are dominated by spectacular sponge gardens, and support high biodiversity. Approximately 745 species of molluscs (shellfish, squid and octopus) have been found, including several that are considered rare. Six hundred and twenty eight species of fish are known to occur in the Coral Sea. The small islets and cays of the Coral Sea are important nesting places for many species of seabirds.

1.21 Reefs in the area provide a habitat mosaic for diverse and abundant invertebrate and fish communities. A diversity of hard and soft corals, sponge gardens, crustaceans and molluscs are found in the area, as well as a distinct Coral Sea reef fish community that includes many unique species.

1.22 Significant variation in water depth and sea floor features are contributing factors to the high levels of species diversity in the area. Sections of the continental shelf have a mosaic of rocky reefs and soft sediments and support species from a diverse range of taxonomic groups. The extensive seamount systems of the Coral Sea contain a large variety of sponges, corals, gorgonians, sea squirts and crinoids, the latter of which can grow unusually large and are frequently very long-lived, often exceeding several hundred years.

1.23 Abyssal regions are yet to be fully explored, but there is evidence of biologically important systems likely to contain a vast reservoir of undiscovered species.

Productivity

1.24 The pelagic environment of the area is akin to a vast desert with small oases of biodiversity and productivity. These areas of primary productivity influence the spread of algae, one of the area's most abundant and diverse life forms, covering a greater region than corals and forming an important part of the food chain. Areas with a high biomass of algae

increase planktonic activity and create high levels of prey abundance, attracting aggregations of higher order herbivorous and apex predator species. These localized productivity hot spots in an otherwise nutrient-poor environment provide habitat, migration and dispersal corridors for many iconic and endangered species.

1.25 Marine species and seabirds can journey hundreds or even thousands of kilometres to breed in the Coral Sea, or to travel through en route to breeding areas beyond the region. Areas of high productivity such as the seamounts are therefore critical "stepping stones" within the barren open ocean and are important aggregators for a range of species including lantern fish, albacore tuna, billfish and sharks. These species rely on foraging opportunities supplied by productivity hot spots in the Coral Sea to sustain them on their journey. Large marine mammals journey many kilometres to breed in the Reserve, or to travel through en route to breeding areas.

1.26 It is also thought that the organic particulates contained in nutrient-rich intrusions in the area are responsible for the settlement and sustained growth of coral reef ecosystems, which have the highest gross primary productivity of all ocean ecosystems. These waters carry organic matter into the region where they contribute significantly to the overall productivity of the system.

Spawning and breeding grounds

1.27 The area contains critical habitat features used by numerous species to spawn and breed and which are therefore essential for their survival.

.1 The waters over the Queensland and Townsville Troughs appear important for attracting aggregations of large pelagic species, either to feed or spawn.

.2 Extensive seabird rookeries within the small islets and cays of the area are of global and national importance.

.3 The area is a major feeding and breeding location for six of the world's seven species of sea turtles, all of which are listed on the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species.

.4 Particularly sheltered regions, such as lagoons, are thought to be important nursery sites for sharks and predatory fish, while other species, such as the dwarf minke whale, the hawksbill and leatherback turtles and the endangered Herald petrel, forage in these calmer areas.

.5 The northern extension of the Tasmantid Seamount Chain, where the seamounts extend to the surface and are capped by islands and reefs, provide feeding and breeding grounds for open ocean species including billfish, marine turtles and marine mammals.

.6 Each year from September to December, black marlin aggregate in the area to spawn. This is the only known spawning location for black marlin in the world.

Naturalness

1.28 The Coral Sea is considered one of the most distinctive and undisturbed natural systems in the world.

1.29 The area is not directly threatened by land-based sources of pollution and has relatively low levels of fishing. It is one of the world's last tropical oceanic regions containing high biodiversity coral reefs that are virtually pristine, and where large populations of pelagic predators have not been severely depleted. The topography of the area has also contributed to its pristine nature, with recent surveys identifying deep-sea ecosystems which have remained largely unchanged for millions of years.

1.30 The Coringa Cays and Lihou Islets contain important bird and turtle nesting sites that are almost totally free from anthropogenic disturbances such as lighting, beach use, pollution, feral animals, and boat traffic compared to nesting sites throughout the GBR. These areas, therefore, are reference sites to determine the impacts of such disturbances on breeding success within the populations.

Integrity

1.31 The extension area covers a large area, and encompasses parts of six provincial bioregions identified in the Integrated Marine and Coastal Regionalisation of Australia Version 4.0 (IMCRA v.4.0). These bioregions contain a wide variety of interconnected habitats, and also provide important "stepping-stone" links between the GBR and the wider Pacific Ocean.

1.32 The integrity of the area is in part due to its remote nature, with the nearest point to a mainland coast over 60 kilometres away, and the furthest point 1100 kilometres.

1.33 The area therefore demonstrates the characteristics of an isolated, effectively self-sustaining ecological unit, as evidenced by the high proportion of endemism both within the region, and between individual reef communities.

Fragility

1.34 Although the Coral Sea contains a number of critical shallow reef and terrestrial habitats, these represent less than 1% of the total area. Their small size, isolation from each other and high exposure to cyclones and storms make them more vulnerable to catastrophic impacts of natural disturbances than the contiguous reef systems of the GBR. These precarious conditions increase the area's ecological fragility and the risk of local extinctions. A high proportion of pelagic and deep-water species are particularly vulnerable to anthropogenic impacts.

1.35 While the isolation of the area's ecosystems has ensured a great deal of diversity and endemicity between communities and populations, it also means these systems can be particularly fragile and susceptible to external factors with potentially catastrophic, long-term cascade effects.

1.36 The area's deep-sea organisms are generally slow growing, long-lived, late-reproducing species with few offspring, and as a result can take a significant amount of time to rebuild populations. The cold coral reef systems take thousands of years to develop even in areas with stable conditions. They are fragile and extremely susceptible to damage as recovery rates are immensely slow.

Bio-geographic importance

1.37 A number of biologically important areas are located within, or intersect with the area:

.1 Seasonal migration routes and feeding sites for cetaceans including the humpback whale occur throughout the region. The humpback whale is also known to breed and calve in the area.

.2 Migration routes and foraging and feeding sites for 13 species of seabird listed under the EPBC Act as threatened, endangered and/or migratory are located in the area.

.3 The green turtle breeds in the area, with the Coringa-Herald-Lihou area particularly important for nesting and inter-nesting activities.

.4 In spring and summer, whale sharks aggregate to feed around Bougainville Reef and white sharks use the south west Coral Sea, adjacent to the Swain Reefs, as they move between nursery areas and for opportunistic feeding.

.5 The minimal impacts on the area and its relative lack of disturbance mean that its various ecosystems provide a representation of what the geographic distribution of organisms would naturally resemble in comparable, but more highly impacted marine ecosystems around the world.

2 Social, cultural and economic criteria

Social or economic dependency

2.1 Commercial fisheries have a relatively small presence in the south west Coral Sea compared to other marine regions around Australia. Commonwealth and Queensland state managed fisheries occur in the area, including line, hand collection, trawl, purse seine, trap and net fisheries.

2.2 Almost all tourism activities that occur in the south west Coral Sea are nature-based and reliant on an intact Coral Sea ecosystem. They include charter fishing, snorkelling, scuba diving, whale watching and cruising.

2.3 Known scuba diving and snorkelling hotspots in the Coral Sea region include the Osprey and Shark Reefs, for their significant populations of shark. These activities also occur in the Coringa Islets, Herald Cays and at Lihou Reef, although the extreme isolation of these locations means that they are not often visited. They also take place off other islands and shallow water seafloor features in the Coral Sea region, albeit on a limited basis.

2.4 Scuba diving and snorkelling are predominantly eco-tourism or heritage-based tourism activities with participants preferring locations that offer near-pristine marine environments or dive wrecks of interest. Some commercial and educational organizations offer science-based tourism opportunities where divers and snorkelers participate in experiments or surveys. Cruise ships also frequent the region, some regularly visiting Willis Island.

Cultural heritage

2.5 Like the GBR and Torres Strait, the Coral Sea is also of indigenous cultural and social significance to island and coastal communities. Many Aboriginal and Torres Strait island people undertake traditional use of marine resource activities to provide traditional food, practice their living maritime culture and to educate younger generations about traditional and cultural rules and protocols.

2.6 The area contains a large number of historic shipwrecks, including the wrecks of the *Cato* and **HMS Porpoise**, which are located in protected zones established under Australia's *Historic Shipwrecks Act 1976*. The region was significant in the Battle of the Coral Sea during World War II.

3 Scientific and educational criteria

Research

3.1 Given the scale and location of the proposed extension area to the PSSA, large-scale oceanographic features are well known and documented. However, there is a lack of knowledge of finer-scale hydrodynamics linking habitats within the Coral Sea. Further, the potential impacts of climate change on the Coral Sea are yet to be understood.

3.2 In spite of the relatively few detailed studies on the area, it remains one of high scientific interest. The remote location of the area, and its reputation as one of the most distinctive and undisturbed natural systems in the world, offers researchers a rare opportunity to study a biota over an area of significant scale that has not been markedly impacted by fishing and which is likely to remain undisturbed.

3.3 Domestic and international research institutions are actively undertaking research in the area. In addition to research institutions, tourist operators and volunteer organisations maintain active monitoring programs.

3.4 The occupied meteorological facility on Willis Island has been providing data to Bureau of Meteorology scientists and others since 1921. Automatic weather stations are located on Bougainville Reef, Cato Island, Flinders Reef (Flinders Coral Cay), Frederick Reef, Holmes Reef, Lihou Reef (Turtle Islet), Marion Reef and Moore Reef. Observations from Willis Island and the automatic weather stations are important for climate analysis and numerical weather prediction models, for fine-tuning forecasts and warnings, and are particularly important for early warning of tropical cyclones.

Baseline for monitoring studies

3.5 The extension area to the PSSA is remote and considered a relatively undisturbed natural system. Although its location has meant that detailed studies of the area are limited, the Coral Sea is a known habitat for many protected species, and spawning aggregations and nesting locations have been identified. The area also provides migratory corridors for a variety of important species, and as such provides suitable baseline conditions for future monitoring studies.

ANNEX 3

VULNERABILITY TO DAMAGE BY INTERNATIONAL SHIPPING ACTIVITIES[2]

(Note: A detailed description of the characteristics of the maritime traffic, the transport of harmful substances, and the threats from maritime incidents, including a description of the hydrographical, meteorological and oceanographical conditions may be found in paragraphs 81 to 109 of document MEPC 68/10/1.)

1 Vessel traffic characteristics

Operational factors

1.1 There are two major shipping routes in the region – the Inner Route and the Outer Route of the GBR. While the Inner Route lies relatively close to the Queensland coast within the GBR and Torres Strait PSSA, the Outer Route begins at the north-eastern limit of the Torres Strait (the Great North-East Channel), continues southwards through the Coral Sea and re-joins the Queensland coast near Sandy Cape (south of Gladstone) (see figure 1 of appendix 3 of document MEPC 68/10/1).

1.2 The Outer Route experiences south-east trade winds and heavy seas for about nine months of the year. A vessel suffering serious propulsion or power failure in the Coral Sea will be many hundreds of kilometres from towage assistance and could drift on to one of the numerous reefs or cays in the Coral Sea before any towage assistance can arrive. Anchoring is impractical due to the precipitous depths that prevail up to the edges of these reefs.

Vessel types

1.3 There is a wide variety of vessel types operating in this area. Ships entering and leaving Queensland coastal ports are primarily dry bulk carriers (most notably carrying coal) and, increasingly, liquefied natural gas (LNG) tankers. Oil and chemical carriers calling at Australian east coast ports mainly choose to use the Outer Route. Other ships transiting through the south west Coral Sea trading between Asia and other east coast Australian ports, such as Brisbane, Newcastle, Sydney and Melbourne, transport a variety of cargoes including containerized, dry, liquid, vehicular and general cargoes.

Traffic characteristics

1.4 In addition to ships using the Outer Route to transit between Torres Strait and east coast Australian ports, the Outer Route converges in the south western Coral Sea with the north/south route used by ships transiting between Asian ports via Jomard Entrance (Papua New Guinea) and major Australian east coast ports such as Newcastle, Sydney and Melbourne, and commodity exporting ports in Queensland.

1.5 Ships bound to and from Queensland ports are also a major consideration in terms of the risk to the ecosystem from international shipping activities in the south west Coral Sea. There are four main passages through the GBR that result in a corresponding concentration of traffic in the south west Coral Sea. These are Grafton Passage (near Cairns); Palm Passage (near Townsville); Hydrographers Passage (near Mackay); and through the Capricorn and Curtis Channels in the south.

[2] The text in this annex is taken from Australia's submission contained in document MEPC 68/10/1.

1.6 These shipping routes and passages can be identified in the Automatic Identification System (AIS) vessel traffic density information provided in appendix 2 of document MEPC 68/10/1.

1.7 Shipping activity in the Coral Sea is expected to increase in the coming years. The expansion of the Australian resources sector, which includes other east coast bulk ports such as Newcastle and Port Kembla (most ships en route to and from these ports use the north/south route through the south west Coral Sea), is the major factor in the expected growth of 81% in the total national traffic at sea by 2020.

Harmful substances carried

1.8 A wide variety of vessels carrying a range of potentially harmful substances operate in this area. The Outer Route is generally used by oil and chemical tankers visiting Australian east coast ports, while there is increasing LNG tanker traffic entering and leaving Queensland ports.

2 Natural factors

Hydrographical

2.1 There are some areas immediately around Coral Sea cays, reefs and islets where the depth of water, surveyed bathymetry quality and/or final charted product scale pose some navigational risk for larger vessel types. These areas are clearly marked on nautical charts and, in general, such areas should be well avoided by commercial shipping. Shipping should always navigate with due regard for charted data, chart scale and stated reliability of data within the area of interest.

2.2 Generally, all areas within the PSSA (apart from the proposed area to be avoided (ATBA), discussed below) are too deep to offer any anchoring opportunity.

Meteorological

2.3 Parts of the area are subject to the highest frequency of tropical cyclones in eastern Australia, creating a high disturbance regime for its ecological communities, resulting in increased diversity due to the frequent regeneration of reefs following storm events. In the last 100 years, cyclones have become less frequent but more intense, and in the last 12 years the region has experienced four extreme cyclones (category 4 or 5).

2.4 In general, during winter months, the predominant winds are from the south-east with small southerly and easterly components. Summer months exhibit an increased easterly component in addition to the south easterly winds.

2.5 Winds in these areas may produce shallow surface currents in addition to those deeper currents described below.

Oceanographic

2.6 Oceanographic processes play a significant role in the biological patterns across the Coral Sea region. There are three main currents that affect the region; the South Equatorial, Hiri, and East Australian currents. The South Equatorial Current moves west toward Townsville and Cairns from offshore waters to the east. As it moves toward the coast it splits into the north-flowing Hiri Current and the East Australian Current. Geomorphic features interact with these ocean currents to create variable speeds and directions.

2.7 A slow and deep (>100 m) clockwise eddy, originating from the East Australian Current, circulates around the Marion Plateau. A similar gyre system of ocean currents exists atop the Queensland Plateau. The flow of these localized features is thought to create a barrier to larval dispersal that contributes to the high species endemism and localized distribution of species in the region.

2.8 The geomorphic characteristics of the coral reefs and cays reflect the constant exposure to high energy wind and wave conditions. The East Australian Current and its associated eddy fields are large scale, spatially predictable, ecologically important pelagic features represented in the region.

Other information

2.9 The Coral Sea's ecology is largely shaped by physical forces such as climate and weather patterns, the direction and strength of currents, the shape of the underlying seabed, and the interaction between water movement and seafloor topography. These forces affect the distribution of species, the availability of nutrients and prey, the levels of disturbance experienced by ecological communities and their ability to recover from natural and human pressures and impacts.

2.10 In addition to the shipwrecks mentioned in annex 2, there have also been a number of incidents and near misses in the region in recent years that demonstrate the potential risk of environmental harm by ships that conduct their passage through the waters of the PSSA extension. Several case studies on near misses in recent years are provided in appendix 3 of document MEPC 68/10/1.

ANNEX 4

ASSOCIATED PROTECTIVE MEASURES FOR THE GREAT BARRIER REEF, TORRES STRAIT AND CORAL SEA PSSA

Recommendatory Associated Protective Measures (APMs) are:

.1 An area to be avoided (ATBA) encompassing the reefs, shoals, and islets that lie generally to the north-east of the GBR, between Palm and Hydrographers Passage. Keeping transiting SOLAS ships clear of this area will mitigate the risk of groundings and allow more time for intervention, in case of developing situations (e.g. a ship suffering breakdown of its propulsion machinery) (see appendix 3 of document MEPC 68/10/1 for further information);

.2 Two 5 nautical mile wide two-way routes – one in Diamond Passage and the other to the West of Holmes Reef in the south-west Coral Sea.

.1 The two-way route in Diamond Passage extends from approximately 25 nautical miles south of Diamond Passage through to approximately 35 nautical miles north of the passage.

.2 The two-way route West of Holmes Reef extends for 32.5 nautical miles approximately north west of Holmes Reef and 20.5 nautical miles approximately south west of Holmes Reef; and

.3 The proposed two-way routes aim to reduce the risks of collision and grounding of ships by separating opposing streams of traffic, whilst ensuring ships avoid the shoals, reef and islands that lie close outside the two-way routes. The two-way routes also aim to allow ships to follow well-defined lanes, thereby enhancing the safety and efficiency of navigation through effective passage planning. (see appendix 4 of document MEPC 68/10/1 for further information).

The APMs are new ships' routeing systems under SOLAS regulation V/10 and are provided in full in appendices 3 and 4 of document MEPC 68/10/1 and depicted in the chartlets below.

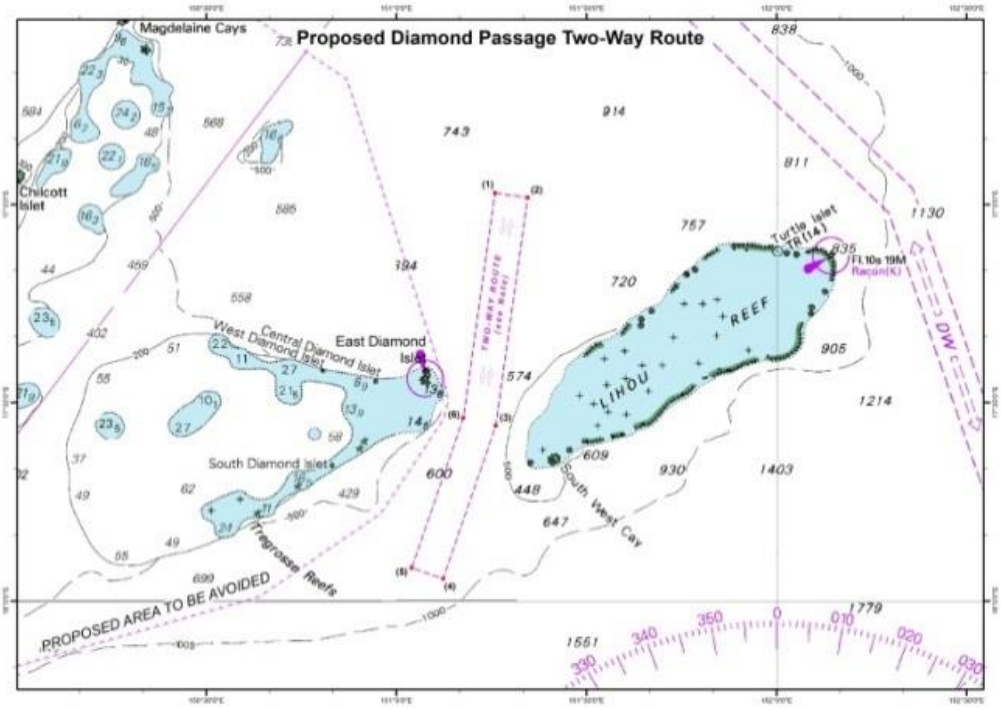
DESCRIPTION OF THE TWO-WAY ROUTES AND ASSOCIATED CHARTLETS IN THE CORAL SEA

The ship routeing systems consist of two recommendatory two-way routes in the south-west portion of the Coral Sea, each being five nautical miles wide.

Diamond Passage

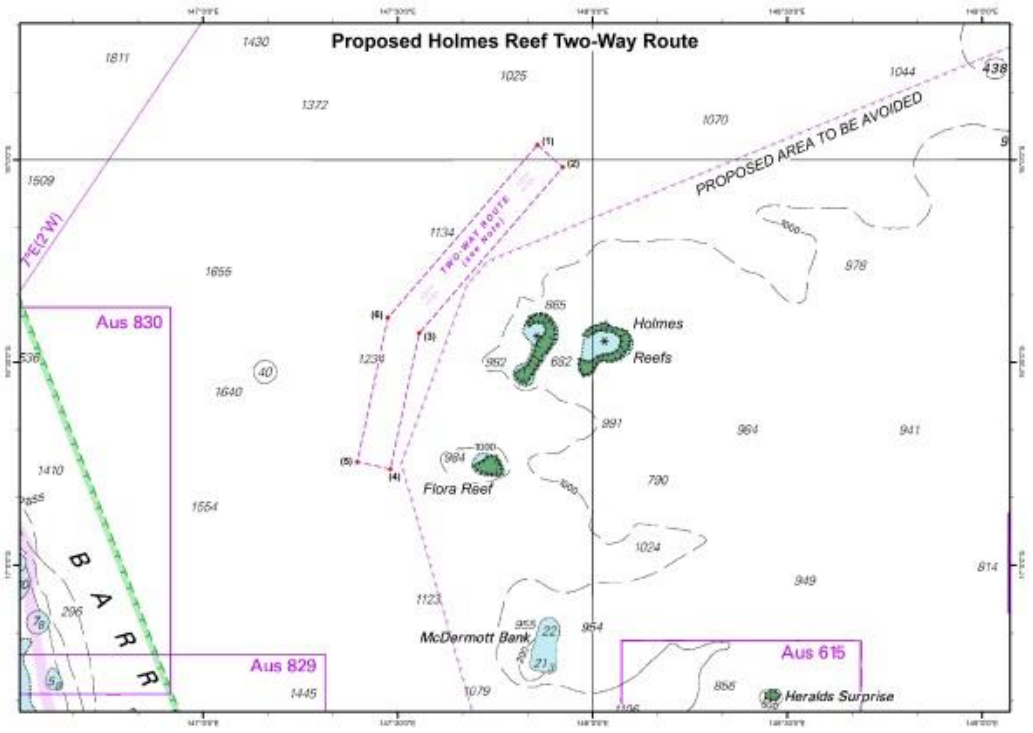
The Diamond Passage two-way route starts approximately south east of South Diamond Islet and extends on a bearing of 019-199 degrees for 24.5 nautical miles. It then changes to a bearing of 008-188 degrees for 35 nautical miles.

From the two-way route's centreline, the closest distance to the 100 metre bathymetric contour is approximately 6.9 nautical miles in both east and west directions. This means that the passage width between those contours, at its narrowest, is approximately 13.8 nautical miles.



West of Holmes Reef

The Holmes Reef two-way route commences west of Flora Reef and extends along a bearing of 012-192 degrees for 20.5 nautical miles. The bearing changes to 040-220 degrees for 32.5 nautical miles. Holmes Reefs and Flora Reef are over 10 nautical miles from the eastern limit of the two-way route.



NAMES, NUMBERS, EDITIONS AND GEODETIC DATUMS OF THE REFERENCE CHARTS

Diamond Passage

Names	Number	Edition	Datum
Diamond Passage	AUS614	Ed 2	WGS84
Willis Islets	AUS617 Pt 1	Ed 2	WGS84
South West Islet to Magdelaine Cays	AUS617 Pt 2	Ed 2	WGS84
Mackay to Solomon Islands	AUS4621 (INT621)	Ed 4	WGS84

West of Holmes Reef

Names	Number	Edition	Datum
Flinders Reefs	AUS615 Pt 1	Ed 2	WGS84
Flora Reef and Holmes Reefs	AUS615 Pt 2	Ed 2	WGS84
Percy Isles to Booby Island	AUS4620 (INT 620)	Ed 6	WGS84

GEOGRAPHICAL COORDINATES OF THE RECOMMENDATORY TWO-WAY ROUTES

A list of the geographical coordinates of the recommendatory two-way routes is provided below.

All geographical positions are based on WGS 84.

Individual coordinate numbering refers to those shown in figure 2 (Diamond Passage) and figure 3 (Holmes Reef).

Diamond Passage

The Western limit is bounded by lines joining the following coordinates:

(1) 16° 58.25' S 151° 15.56' E
(6) 17° 32.32' S 151° 10.56' E
(5) 17° 55.00' S 151° 02.41' E

The Eastern limit is bounded by lines joining the following coordinates:

(2) 16° 58.95' S 151° 20.72' E
(3) 17° 33.50' S 151° 15.68' E
(4) 17° 56.64' S 151° 07.37' E

Holmes Reef

The Western limit is bounded by lines joining the following coordinates:

(1) 15° 57.78' S 147° 51.50' E
(6) 16° 23.37' S 147° 28.48' E
(5) 16° 44.76' S 147° 23.76' E

The Eastern limit is bounded by lines joining the following coordinates:

(2) 16° 01.08' S 147° 55.42' E
(3) 16° 25.69' S 147° 33.29' E
(4) 16° 45.81' S 147° 28.86' E

CHARTLETS AND A GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF AREA TO BE AVOIDED IN THE CORAL SEA

The area lies off the north-east coast of Australia, within the PSSA in the south-west Coral Sea (figure 1). It encompasses a multitude of reefs, shoals and islets that lie generally to the north-east of the Great Barrier Reef (GBR), between Palm and Hydrographers Passage (figure 2).

In order to reduce the risk of a maritime casualty and potential damage to the sensitive marine environment, transiting ships should not enter the ATBA. The ATBA will result in minor changes to the traffic pattern for ships that are required to conform to SOLAS requirements. Some of these ships (e.g. cruise ships) which demonstrate an operational need to visit a location within the ATBA and which have adequate risk mitigation measures in place may enter the ATBA.

The ATBA is recommendatory in nature.

The ATBA extends over approximately 25,250 square nautical miles and encompasses many reefs, cays, islets, sandbars and shoal patches (figure 3). The 21 recognized, named and charted features that are within the ATBA boundary include:

- Abington Reef;
- Central Diamond Islet;
- Chilcott Islet;
- Dart Reef;
- Diane Bank;
- East Diamond Islet;
- Flinders Reefs;
- Flora Reef;
- Herald Cays;
- Herald Surprise; and
- Holmes Reefs;
- Magdelaine Cays;
- Malay Reef;
- McDermott Bank.
- Moore Reefs;
- North Cay;
- South Diamond Islet;
- South West Islet;
- Tregrosse Reefs;
- West Diamond Islet; and
- Willis Islets.

NAMES, NUMBERS, EDITIONS AND GEODETIC DATUMS OF THE REFERENCE CHARTS

Name	Number	Edition	Datum
Diamond Passage	AUS614	Ed 2	WGS84
Flinders Reefs	AUS615 Pt 1	Ed 2	WGS84
Flora Reef and Holmes Reefs	AUS615 Pt 2	Ed 2	WGS84
Willis Islets	AUS617 Pt 1	Ed 2	WGS84
South West Islet to Magdelaine Cays	AUS617 Pt 2	Ed 2	WGS84
Percy Isles to Booby Island	AUS4620 (INT 620)	Ed 6	WGS84
Mackay to Solomon Islands	AUS4621 (INT621)	Ed 4	WGS84

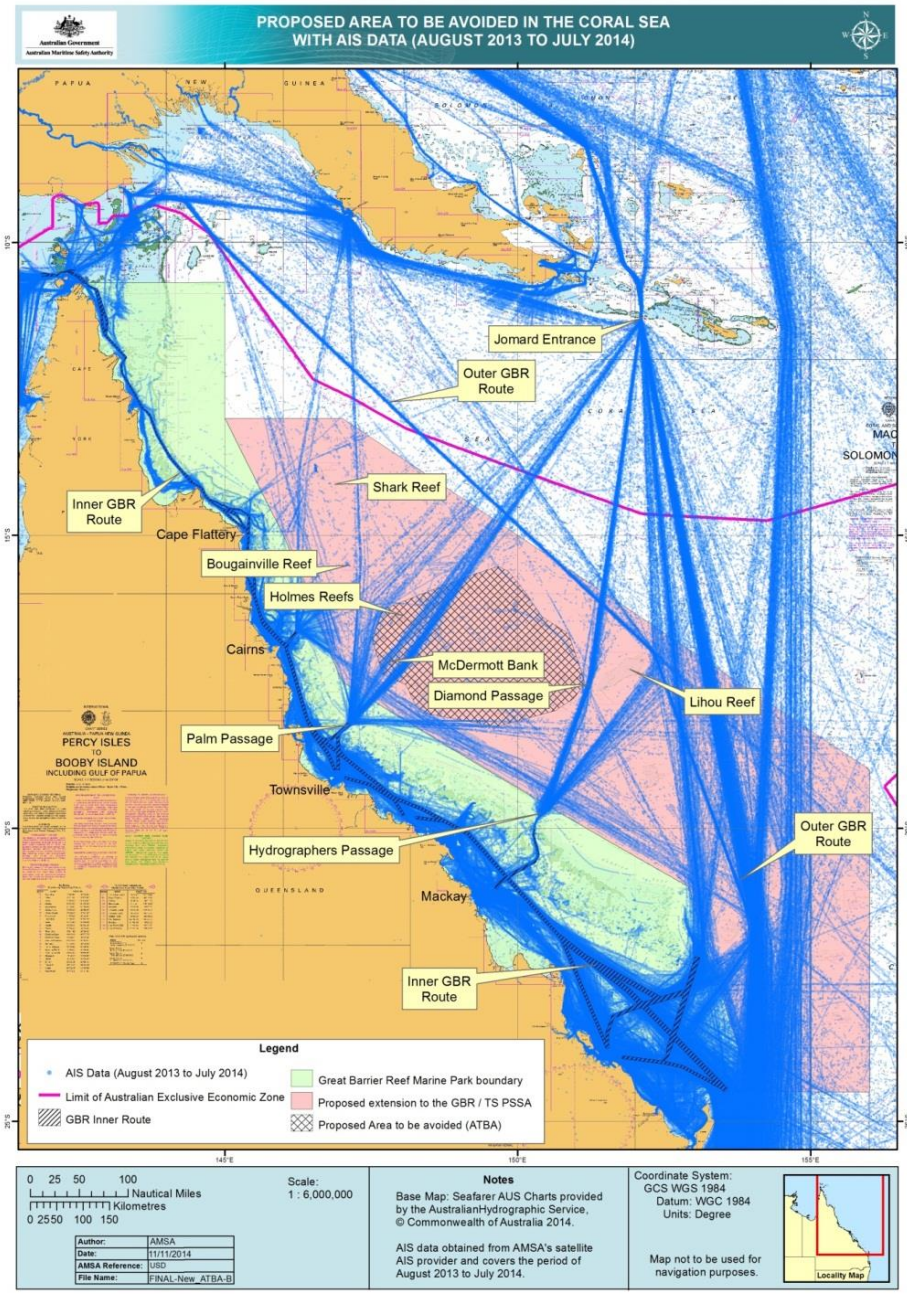


Figure 1: Location of the ATBA in the Coral Sea

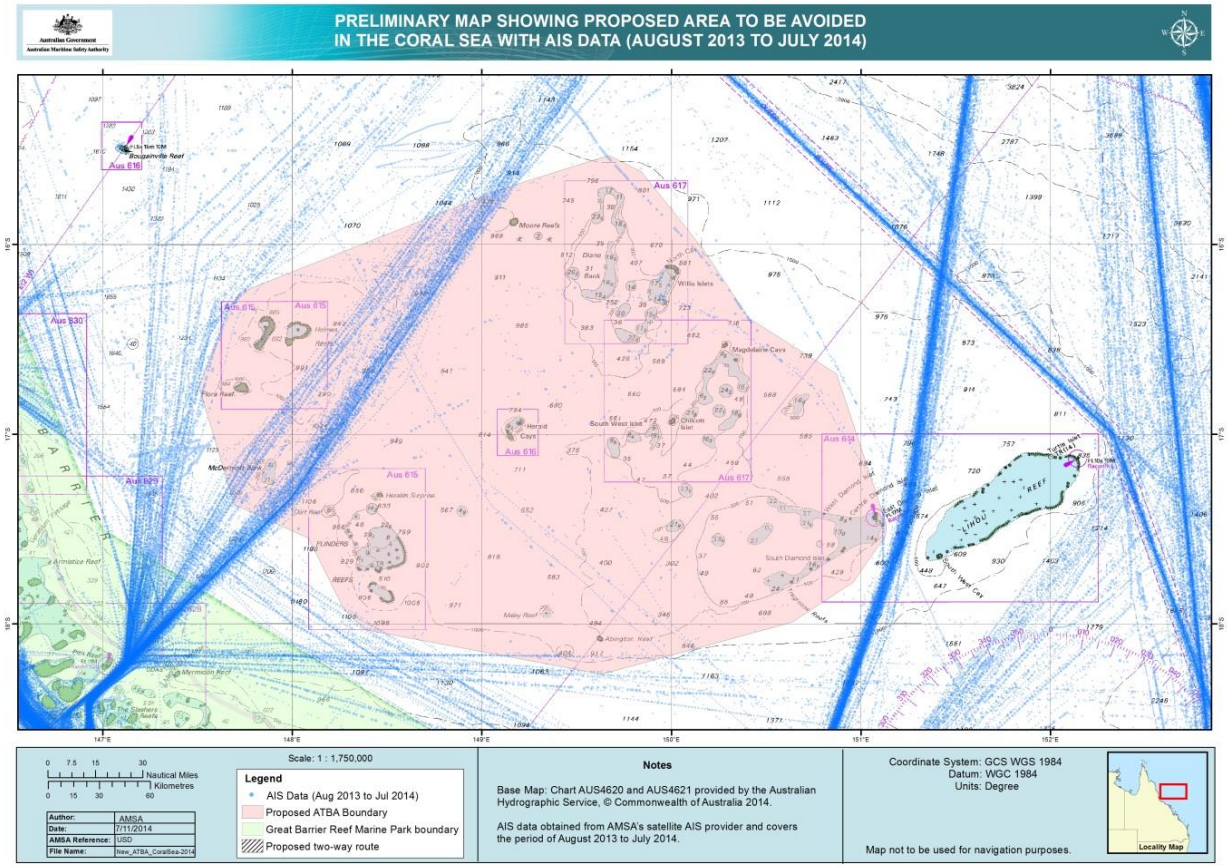


Figure 2: Extent of the ATBA

GEOGRAPHICAL COORDINATES OF THE AREA TO BE AVOIDED IN THE CORAL SEA

The geographical coordinates of the ATBA (figure 3) are provided below.

All geographical positions are based on WGS 84.

Individual coordinate numbers in brackets refer to those shown in figure 3.

Area to be avoided

An area to be avoided is established bounded by a line connecting the following geographical positions:

(1)	15° 42.48' S	149° 06.07' E	(11)	17° 59.43' S	150° 38.35' E
(2)	15° 31.87' S	149° 40.07' E	(12)	18° 15.94' S	149° 37.97' E
(3)	15° 36.90' S	149° 50.43' E	(13)	18° 01.91' S	148° 23.34' E
(4)	16° 01.16' S	150° 09.79' E	(14)	17° 55.49' S	148° 16.26' E
(5)	16° 23.25' S	150° 24.56' E	(15)	17° 32.90' S	148° 05.14' E
(6)	16° 40.91' S	150° 52.21' E	(16)	17° 22.27' S	147° 41.63' E
(7)	17° 28.26' S	151° 08.01' E	(17)	16° 45.01' S	147° 30.47' E
(8)	17° 30.71' S	151° 08.01' E	(18)	16° 18.56' S	147° 40.61' E
(9)	17° 32.59' S	151° 07.45' E	(19)	16° 15.00' S	147° 43.82' E
(10)	17° 46.83' S	150° 57.56' E			

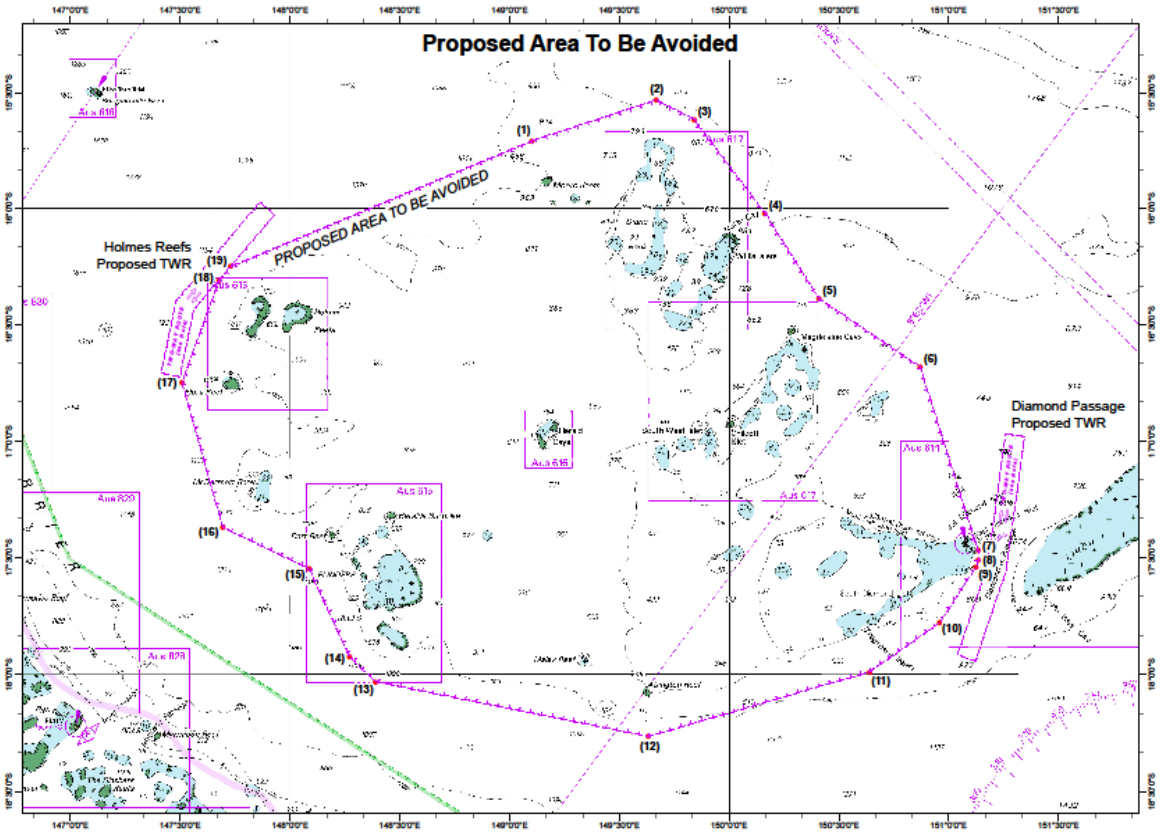


Figure 3: ATBA and two-way routes around it

***

ANNEX 17

RESOLUTION MEPC.269(68)
(adopted on 15 May 2015)

2015 GUIDELINES FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE INVENTORY OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

THE MARINE ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION COMMITTEE,

RECALLING Article 38(a) of the Convention on the International Maritime Organization concerning the functions of the Marine Environment Protection Committee conferred upon it by international conventions for the prevention and control of marine pollution from ships,

RECALLING ALSO that the International Conference on the Safe and Environmentally Sound Recycling of Ships held in May 2009 adopted the Hong Kong International Convention for the Safe and Environmentally Sound Recycling of Ships, 2009 (the Hong Kong Convention) together with six Conference resolutions,

NOTING that regulations 5.1 and 5.2 of the annex to the Hong Kong Convention require that ships shall have on board an Inventory of Hazardous Materials which shall be prepared and verified taking into account guidelines, including any threshold values and exemptions contained in those guidelines, developed by the Organization,

NOTING ALSO resolution MEPC.197(62) by which it adopted *Guidelines for the development of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials* (the guidelines) and resolved to keep them under review,

RECOGNIZING the need to improve the guidance on threshold values and exemptions, as contained in the aforementioned guidelines,

HAVING CONSIDERED, at its sixty-eighth session, the recommendation made by the Sub-Committee on Pollution Prevention and Response, at its second session,

1 ADOPTS the *2015 Guidelines for the development of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials* as set out in the annex to this resolution;

2 INVITES Member Governments to apply the 2015 Guidelines as soon as possible, or latest when the Convention enters into force;

3 AGREES to keep the 2015 Guidelines under review in the light of experience gained with their application;

4 SUPERSEDES the guidelines adopted by resolution MEPC.197(62).

ANNEX

2015 GUIDELINES FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE INVENTORY OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Objectives

These guidelines provide recommendations for developing the Inventory of Hazardous Materials (hereinafter referred to as "the Inventory" or "the IHM") to assist compliance with regulation 5 (Inventory of Hazardous Materials) of the Hong Kong International Convention for the Safe and Environmentally Sound Recycling of Ships, 2009 (hereinafter referred to as "the Convention").

1.2 Application

These guidelines have been developed to provide relevant stakeholders (e.g. shipbuilders, equipment suppliers, repairers, shipowners and ship management companies) with the essential requirements for the practical and logical development of the Inventory.

1.3 Objectives

The objectives of the Inventory are to provide ship-specific information on the actual hazardous materials present on board, in order to protect health and safety and to prevent environmental pollution at ship recycling facilities. This information will be used by the ship recycling facilities in order to decide how to manage the types and amounts of materials identified in the Inventory of Hazardous Materials (regulation 9 of the Convention).

2 DEFINITIONS

The terms used in these guidelines have the same meaning as those defined in the Convention, with the following additional definitions which apply to these guidelines only.

2.1 *Exemption* (as referred to in regulation 5 of the Convention) means materials specified in paragraph 3.3 in these guidelines that do not need to be listed on the IHM, even if such materials or items exceed the IHM threshold values.

2.2 *Fixed* means the conditions that equipment or materials are securely fitted with the ship, such as by welding or with bolts, riveted or cemented, and used at their position, including electrical cables and gaskets.

2.3 *Homogeneous material* means a material of uniform composition throughout that cannot be mechanically disjointed into different materials, meaning that the materials cannot, in principle, be separated by mechanical actions such as unscrewing, cutting, crushing, grinding and abrasive processes.

2.4 *Loosely fitted equipment* means equipment or materials present on board the ship by the conditions other than "fixed", such as fire extinguishers, distress flares, and lifebuoys.

2.5 *Product* means machinery, equipment, materials and applied coatings on board a ship.

2.6 *Supplier* means a company which provides products; which may be a manufacturer, trader or agency.

2.7 *Supply chain* means the series of entities involved in the supply and purchase of materials and goods, from raw materials to final product.

2.8 *Threshold value* is defined as the concentration value in homogeneous materials.

3 REQUIREMENTS FOR THE INVENTORY

3.1 Scope of the Inventory

The Inventory consists of:

Part I: Materials contained in ship structure or equipment;

Part II: Operationally generated wastes; and

Part III: Stores.

3.2 Materials to be listed in the Inventory

3.2.1 Appendix 1 of these guidelines (Items to be listed in the Inventory of Hazardous Materials), provides information on the hazardous materials that may be found on board a ship. Materials set out in appendix 1 should be listed in the Inventory. Each item in appendix 1 of these guidelines is classified under tables A, B, C or D, according to its properties:

.1 table A comprises the materials listed in appendix 1 of the Convention;

.2 table B comprises the materials listed in appendix 2 of the Convention;

.3 table C (Potentially hazardous items) comprises items which are potentially hazardous to the environment and human health at ship recycling facilities; and

.4 table D (Regular consumable goods potentially containing hazardous materials) comprises goods which are not integral to a ship and are unlikely to be dismantled or treated at a ship recycling facility.

3.2.2 Tables A and B correspond to part I of the Inventory. Table C corresponds to parts II and III and table D corresponds to part III.

3.2.3 For loosely fitted equipment, there is no need to list this in part I of the Inventory. Such equipment which remains on board when the ship is recycled should be listed in part III.

3.2.4 Those batteries containing lead acid or other hazardous materials that are fixed in place should be listed in part I of the Inventory. Batteries that are loosely fitted, which includes consumer batteries and batteries in stores, should be listed in part III of the Inventory.

3.2.5 Similar materials or items that contain hazardous materials that potentially exceed the threshold value can be listed together (not individually) on the IHM with their general location and approximate amount specified there (hereinafter referred to as "bulk listing"). An example of how to list those materials and items is shown in row 3 of table 1 of appendix 3.

3.3 Exemptions – Materials not required to be listed in the Inventory

3.3.1 Materials listed in Table B that are inherent in solid metals or metal alloys, such as steels, aluminium, brasses, bronzes, plating and solders, provided they are used in general construction, such as hull, superstructure, pipes or housings for equipment and machinery, are not required to be listed in the Inventory.

3.3.2 Although electrical and electronic equipment is required to be listed in the Inventory, the amount of hazardous materials potentially contained in printed wiring boards (printed circuit boards) installed in the equipment does not need to be reported in the Inventory.

3.4 Standard format of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials

The Inventory should be developed on the basis of the standard format set out in appendix 2 of these guidelines: Standard format of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials. Examples of how to complete the Inventory are provided for guidance purposes only.

3.5 Revision to threshold values

Revised threshold values in tables A and B of appendix 1 should be used for IHMs developed or updated after the adoption of the revised values and need not be applied to existing IHMs and IHMs under development. However, when materials are added to the IHM, such as during maintenance, the revised threshold values should be applied and recorded in the IHM.

4 REQUIREMENTS FOR DEVELOPMENT OF THE INVENTORY

4.1 Development of part I of the Inventory for new ships[1]

4.1.1 Part I of the Inventory for new ships should be developed at the design and construction stage.

4.1.2 *Checking of materials listed in table A*

During the development of the Inventory (part I), the presence of materials listed in table A of appendix 1 should be checked and confirmed; the quantity and location of table A materials should be listed in part I of the Inventory. If such materials are used in compliance with the Convention, they should be listed in part I of the Inventory. Any spare parts containing materials listed in table A are required to be listed in part III of the Inventory.

---

[1] In ascertaining whether a ship is a "new ship" or an "existing ship" according to the Convention, the term "a similar stage of construction" in regulation 1.4.2 of the annex to the Convention means the stage at which:

.1 construction identifiable with a specific ship begins: and
.2 assembly of that ship has commenced comprising at least 50 tonnes or 1% of the estimated mass of all structural material, whichever is less.

4.1.3 *Checking of materials listed in table B*

If materials listed in table B of appendix 1 are present in products above the threshold values provided in table B, the quantity and location of the products and the contents of the materials present in them should be listed in part I of the Inventory. Any spare parts containing materials listed in table B are required to be listed in part III of the Inventory.

4.1.4 *Process for checking of materials*

The checking of materials as provided in paragraphs 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 above should be based on the Material Declaration furnished by the suppliers in the shipbuilding supply chain (e.g. equipment suppliers, parts suppliers, material suppliers).

4.2 Development of part I of the Inventory for existing ships

4.2.1 In order to achieve comparable results for existing ships with respect to part I of the Inventory, the following procedure should be followed:

.1 collection of necessary information;

.2 assessment of collected information;

.3 preparation of visual/sampling check plan;

.4 onboard visual check and sampling check; and

.5 preparation of part I of the Inventory and related documentation.

4.2.2 The determination of hazardous materials present on board existing ships should, as far as practicable, be conducted as prescribed for new ships, including the procedures described in sections 6 and 7 of these guidelines. Alternatively, the procedures described in this section may be applied for existing ships, but these procedures should not be used for any new installation resulting from the conversion or repair of existing ships after the initial preparation of the Inventory.

4.2.3 The procedures described in this section should be carried out by the shipowner, who may draw upon expert assistance. Such an expert or expert party should not be the same as the person or organization authorized by the Administration to approve the Inventory).

4.2.4 Reference is made to appendix 4 (Flow diagram for developing part I of the Inventory for existing ships) and appendix 5 (Example of development process for part I of the Inventory for existing ships.

4.2.5 *Collection of necessary information (step 1)*

The shipowner should identify, research, request and procure all reasonably available documentation regarding the ship. Information that will be useful includes maintenance, conversion and repair documents; certificates, manuals, ship's plans, drawings and technical specifications; product information data sheets (such as Material Declarations); and hazardous material inventories or recycling information from sister ships. Potential sources of information could include previous shipowners, the ship builder, historical societies, classification society records and ship recycling facilities with experience working with similar ships.

4.2.6 *Assessment of collected information (step 2)*

The information collected in step 1 above should be assessed. The assessment should cover all materials listed in table A of appendix 1; materials listed in table B should be assessed as far as practicable. The results of the assessment should be reflected in the visual/sampling check plan.

4.2.7 *Preparation of visual/sampling check plan (step 3)*

4.2.7.1 To specify the materials listed in appendix 1 of these guidelines, a visual/sampling check plan should be prepared taking into account the collated information and any appropriate expertise. The visual/sampling check plan should be based on the following three lists:

.1 List of equipment, system and/or area for visual check (any equipment, system and/or area specified regarding the presence of the materials listed in appendix 1 by document analysis should be entered in the List of equipment, system and/or area for visual check);

.2 List of equipment, system and/or area for sampling check (any equipment, system and/or area which cannot be specified regarding the presence of the materials listed in appendix 1 by document or visual analysis should be entered in the List of equipment, system and/or area as requiring sampling check. A sampling check is the taking of samples to identify the presence or absence of hazardous material contained in the equipment, systems, and/or areas, by suitable and generally accepted methods such as laboratory analysis); and

.3 List of equipment, system and/or area classed as "potentially containing hazardous material" (any equipment, system and/or area which cannot be specified regarding the presence of the materials listed in appendix 1 by document analysis may be entered in the List of equipment, system and/or area classed as "potentially containing hazardous material" without the sampling check. The prerequisite for this classification is a comprehensible justification such as the impossibility of conducting sampling without compromising the safety of the ship and its operational efficiency).

4.2.7.2 Visual/sampling checkpoints should be all points where:

.1 the presence of materials to be considered for the Inventory part I as listed in appendix 1 is likely;

.2 the documentation is not specific; or

.3 materials of uncertain composition were used.

4.2.8 *Onboard visual/sampling check (step 4)*

4.2.8.1 The onboard visual/sampling check should be carried out in accordance with the visual/sampling check plan. When a sampling check is carried out, samples should be taken and the sample points should be clearly marked on the ship plan and the sample results should be referenced. Materials of the same kind may be sampled in a representative manner. Such materials are to be checked to ensure that they are of the same kind. The sampling check should be carried out drawing upon expert assistance.

4.2.8.2 Any uncertainty regarding the presence of hazardous materials should be clarified by a visual/sampling check. Checkpoints should be documented in the ship's plan and may be supported by photographs.

4.2.8.3 If the equipment, system and/or area of the ship are not accessible for a visual check or sampling check, they should be classified as "potentially containing hazardous material". The prerequisite for such classification should be the same prerequisite as in section 4.2.7. Any equipment, system and/or area classed as "potentially containing Hazardous Material" may be investigated or subjected to a sampling check at the request of the shipowner during a later survey (e.g. during repair, refit or conversion).

4.2.9 *Preparation of part I of the Inventory and related documentation (step 5)*

If any equipment, system and/or area is classed as either "containing hazardous material" or "potentially containing hazardous material", their approximate quantity and location should be listed in part I of the Inventory. These two categories should be indicated separately in the "Remarks" column of the Inventory.

4.2.10 *Testing methods*

4.2.10.1 Samples may be tested by a variety of methods. "Indicative" or "field tests" may be used when:

.1 the likelihood of a hazard is high;

.2 the test is expected to indicate that the hazard exists; and

.3 the sample is being tested by "specific testing" to show that the hazard is present.

4.2.10.2 Indicative or field tests are quick, inexpensive and useful on board the ship or on site, but they cannot be accurately reproduced or repeated, and cannot identify the hazard specifically, and therefore cannot be relied upon except as "indicators".

4.2.10.3 In all other cases, and in order to avoid dispute, "specific testing" should be used. Specific tests are repeatable, reliable and can demonstrate definitively whether a hazard exists or not. They will also provide a known type of the hazard. The methods indicated are found qualitative and quantitative appropriate and only testing methods to the same effect can be used. Specific tests are to be carried out by a suitably accredited laboratory, working to international standards[2] or equivalent, which will provide a written report that can be relied upon by all parties.

4.2.10.4 Specific test methods for appendix 1 materials are provided in appendix 9.

4.2.11 *Diagram of the location of hazardous materials on board a ship*

Preparation of a diagram showing the location of the materials listed in table A is recommended in order to help ship recycling facilities gain a visual understanding of the Inventory.

[2] For example ISO 17025.

4.3 Maintaining and updating part I of the Inventory during operations

4.3.1 Part I of the Inventory should be appropriately maintained and updated, especially after any repair or conversion or sale of a ship.

4.3.2 *Updating of part I of the Inventory in the event of new installation*

If any machinery or equipment is added to, removed or replaced or the hull coating is renewed, part I of the Inventory should be updated according to the requirements for new ships as stipulated in paragraphs 4.1.2 to 4.1.4. Updating is not required if identical parts or coatings are installed or applied.

4.3.3 *Continuity of part I of the Inventory*

Part I of the Inventory should belong to the ship and the continuity and conformity of the information it contains should be confirmed, especially if the flag, owner or operator of the ship changes.

4.4 Development of part II of the Inventory (operationally generated waste)

4.4.1 Once the decision to recycle a ship has been taken, part II of the Inventory should be developed before the final survey, taking into account that a ship destined to be recycled shall conduct operations in the period prior to entering the Ship Recycling Facility in a manner that minimizes the amount of cargo residues, fuel oil and wastes remaining on board (regulation 8.2 of the Convention).

4.4.2 *Operationally generated wastes to be listed in the Inventory*

If the wastes listed in part II of the Inventory provided in table C (Potentially hazardous items) of appendix 1 are intended for delivery with the ship to a ship recycling facility, the quantity of the operationally generated wastes should be estimated and their approximate quantities and locations should be listed in part II of the Inventory.

4.5 Development of part III of the Inventory (stores)

4.5.1 Once the decision to recycle has been taken, part III of the Inventory should be developed before the final survey, taking into account the fact that a ship destined to be recycled shall minimize the wastes remaining on board (regulation 8.2 of the Convention). Each item listed in part III should correspond to the ship's operations during its last voyage.

4.5.2 *Stores to be listed in the Inventory*

If the stores to be listed in part III of the Inventory provided in table C of appendix 1 are to be delivered with the ship to a ship recycling facility, the unit (e.g. capacity of cans and cylinders), quantity and location of the stores should be listed in part III of the Inventory.

4.5.3 *Liquids and gases sealed in ship's machinery and equipment to be listed in the Inventory*

If any liquids and gases listed in table C of appendix 1 are integral in machinery and equipment on board a ship, their approximate quantity and location should be listed in part III of the Inventory. However, small amounts of lubricating oil, anti-seize compounds and grease which are applied to or injected into machinery and equipment to maintain normal performance do not fall within the scope of this provision. For subsequent completion of

part III of the Inventory during the recycling preparation processes, the quantity of liquids and gases listed in table C of appendix 1 required for normal operation, including the related pipe system volumes, should be prepared and documented at the design and construction stage. This information belongs to the ship, and continuity of this information should be maintained if the flag, owner or operator of the ship changes.

4.5.4 *Regular consumable goods to be listed in the Inventory*

Regular consumable goods, as provided in table D of appendix 1 should not be listed in part I or part II but should be listed in part III of the Inventory if they are to be delivered with the ship to a Ship Recycling Facility. A general description including the name of item (e.g. TV set), manufacturer, quantity and location should be entered in part III of the Inventory. The check on materials provided for in paragraphs 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 of these guidelines does not apply to regular consumable goods.

4.6 Description of location of hazardous materials on board

The locations of hazardous materials on board should be described and identified using the name of location (e.g. second floor of engine-room, bridge DK, APT, No.1 cargo tank, frame number) given in the plans (e.g. general arrangement, fire and safety plan, machinery arrangement or tank arrangement).

4.7 Description of approximate quantity of hazardous materials

In order to identify the approximate quantity of hazardous materials, the standard unit used for hazardous materials should be kg, unless other units (e.g. m^3 for materials of liquid or gases, m^2 for materials used in floors or walls) are considered more appropriate. An approximate quantity should be rounded up to at least two significant figures.

5 REQUIREMENTS FOR ASCERTAINING THE CONFORMITY OF THE INVENTORY

5.1 Design and construction stage

The conformity of part I of the Inventory at the design and construction stage should be ascertained by reference to the collected Supplier's Declaration of Conformity described in section 7 and the related Material Declarations collected from suppliers.

5.2 Operational stage

Shipowners should implement the following measures in order to ensure the conformity of part I of the Inventory:

.1 to designate a person as responsible for maintaining and updating the Inventory (the designated person may be employed ashore or on board);

.2 the designated person, in order to implement paragraph 4.3.2, should establish and supervise a system to ensure the necessary updating of the Inventory in the event of new installation;

.3 to maintain the Inventory including dates of changes or new deleted entries and the signature of the designated person; and

.4 to provide related documents as required for the survey or sale of the ship.

6 MATERIAL DECLARATION

6.1 General

Suppliers to the shipbuilding industry should identify and declare whether or not the materials listed in table A or table B are present above the threshold value specified in appendix 1 of these guidelines. However, this provision does not apply to chemicals which do not constitute a part of the finished product.

6.2 Information required in the declaration

6.2.1 At a minimum the following information is required in the Material Declaration:

.1 date of declaration;

.2 Material Declaration identification number;

.3 supplier's name;

.4 product name (common product name or name used by manufacturer);

.5 product number (for identification by manufacturer);

.6 declaration of whether or not the materials listed in table A and table B of appendix 1 of these guidelines are present in the product above the threshold value stipulated in appendix 1 of these guidelines; and

.7 mass of each constituent material listed in table A and/or table B of appendix 1 of these guidelines if present above threshold value.

6.2.2 An example of the Material Declaration is shown in appendix 6.

7 SUPPLIER'S DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

7.1 Purpose and scope

7.1.1 The purpose of the Supplier's Declaration of Conformity is to provide assurance that the related Material Declaration conforms to section 6.2, and to identify the responsible entity.

7.1.2 The Supplier's Declaration of Conformity remains valid as long as the products are present on board.

7.1.3 The supplier compiling the Supplier's Declaration of Conformity should establish a company policy[3]. The company policy on the management of the chemical substances in products which the supplier manufactures or sells should cover:

.1 Compliance with law:

The regulations and requirements governing the management of chemical substances in products should be clearly described in documents which should be kept and maintained; and

[3] A recognized quality management system may be utilized.

.2 Obtaining of information on chemical substance content:

In procuring raw materials for components and products, suppliers should be selected following an evaluation, and the information on the chemical substances they supply should be obtained.

7.2 Contents and format

7.2.1 The Supplier's Declaration of Conformity should contain the following:

.1 unique identification number;

.2 name and contact address of the issuer;

.3 identification of the subject of the Declaration of Conformity (e.g. name, type, model number, and/or other relevant supplementary information);

.4 statement of conformity;

.5 date and place of issue; and

.6 signature (or equivalent sign of validation), name and function of the authorized person(s) acting on behalf of the issuer.

7.2.2 An example of the Supplier's Declaration of Conformity is shown in appendix 7.

8 LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix 1: Items to be listed in the Inventory of Hazardous Materials

Appendix 2: Standard format of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials

Appendix 3: Example of the development process for part I of the Inventory for new ships

Appendix 4: Flow diagram for developing part I of the Inventory for existing ships

Appendix 5: Example of the development process for part I of the Inventory for existing ships

Appendix 6: Form of Material Declaration

Appendix 7: Form of Supplier's Declaration of Conformity

Appendix 8: Examples of table A and table B materials of appendix 1 with CAS-numbers

Appendix 9: Specific test methods

Appendix 10: Examples of radioactive sources

APPENDIX 1

ITEMS TO BE LISTED IN THE INVENTORY OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

Table A – Materials listed in appendix 1 of the Annex to the Convention

No.	Materials		Inventory			Threshold value
			Part I	Part II	Part III	
A-1	Asbestos		x			0.1%[4]
A-2	Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)		x			50 mg/kg[5]
A-3	Ozone depleting substances	CFCs	x			no threshold value[6]
		Halons	x			
		Other fully halogenated CFCs	x			
		Carbon tetrachloride	x			
		1,1,1-Trichloroethane (Methyl chloroform)	x			
		Hydrochlorofluorocarbons	x			
		Hydrobromofluorocarbons	x			
		Methyl bromide	x			
		Bromochloromethane	x			
A-4	Anti-fouling systems containing organotin compounds as a biocide		x			2,500 mg total tin/kg[7]

[4] In accordance with regulation 4 of the Convention, for all ships, new installation of materials which contain asbestos shall be prohibited. According to the UN recommendation "Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (GHS)" adopted by the United Nations Economic and Social Council's Sub-Committee of Experts on the Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (UNSCEGHS), the UN's Sub-Committee of Experts, in 2002 (published in 2003), carcinogenic mixtures classified as Category 1A (including asbestos mixtures) under the GHS are required to be labelled as carcinogenic if the ratio is more than 0.1%. However, if 1% is applied, this threshold value should be recorded in the Inventory and, if available, the Material Declaration and can be applied not later than five years after the entry into force of the Convention. The threshold value of 0.1% need not be retroactively applied to those Inventories and Material Declarations.

[5] In accordance with regulation 4 of the Convention, for all ships, new installation of materials which contain PCBs shall be prohibited. The Organization set 50 mg/kg as the threshold value referring to the concentration level at which wastes, substances and articles containing, consisting of or contaminated with PCB are characterized as hazardous under the Basel Convention.

[6] "No threshold value" is in accordance with the Montreal Protocol for reporting ODS. Unintentional trace contaminants should not be listed in the Material Declarations and in the Inventory.

[7] This threshold value is based on the *Guidelines for brief sampling of anti-fouling systems on ships* (resolution MEPC.104(49)).

Table B – Materials listed in appendix 2 of the Annex to the Convention

No.	Materials	Inventory			Threshold value
		Part I	Part II	Part III	
B-1	Cadmium and cadmium compounds	x			100 mg/kg[8]
B-2	Hexavalent chromium and hexavalent chromium compounds	x			1,000 mg/kg[8]
B-3	Lead and lead compounds	x			1,000 mg/kg[8]
B-4	Mercury and mercury compounds	x			1,000 mg/kg[8]
B-5	Polybrominated biphenyl (PBBs)	x			50 mg/kg[9]
B-6	Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs)	x			1,000 mg/kg[8]
B-7	Polychlorinated naphthalenes (more than 3 chlorine atoms)	x			50mg/kg[10]
B-8	Radioactive substances	x			no threshold value[11]
B-9	Certain shortchain chlorinated paraffins (Alkanes, C10-C13, chloro)	x			1%[12]

8 The Organization set this as the threshold value referring to the Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS Directive 2011/65/EU, Annex II).

9 The Organization set 50 mg/kg as the threshold value referring to the concentration level at which wastes, substances and articles containing, consisting of or contaminated with PBB are characterized as hazardous under the Basel Convention.

10 The Organization set 50 mg/kg as the threshold value referring to the concentration level at which wastes, substances and articles containing, consisting of or contaminated with PCN are characterized as hazardous under the Basel Convention.

11 All radioactive sources should be included in the Material Declaration and in the Inventory. *Radioactive source* means radioactive material permanently sealed in a capsule or closely bonded and in a solid form that is used as a source of radiation. This includes consumer products and industrial gauges with radioactive materials. Examples are listed in appendix 10.

12 The Organization set 1% as the threshold value referring to the EU legislation that restricts Chlorinated Paraffins from being placed on the market for use as substances or as constituents of other substances or preparations in concentrations higher than 1% (EU Regulation 1907/2006, Annex XVII Entry 42 and Regulation 519/2012).

Table C – Potentially hazardous items

No.	Properties		Goods	Inventory		
				Part I	Part II	Part III
C-1	Liquid	Oiliness	Kerosene			x
C-2			White spirit			x
C-3			Lubricating oil			x
C-4			Hydraulic oil			x
C-5			Anti-seize compounds			x
C-6			Fuel additive			x
C-7			Engine coolant additives			x
C-8			Antifreeze fluids			x
C-9			Boiler and feed water treatment and test re-agents			x
C-10			De-ioniser regenerating chemicals			x
C-11			Evaporator dosing and descaling acids			x
C-12			Paint stabilizers/rust stabilizers			x
C-13			Solvents/thinners			x
C-14			Paints			x
C-15			Chemical refrigerants			x
C-16			Battery electrolyte			x
C-17			Alcohol, methylated spirits			x
C-18	Gas	Explosives/ inflammables	Acetylene			x
C-19			Propane			x
C-20			Butane			x
C-21			Oxygen			x
C-22		Green House Gases	CO_2			x
C-23			Perfluorocarbons (PFCs)			x
C-24			Methane			x
C-25			Hydrofluorocarbon (HFCs)			x
C-27			Nitrous oxide (N_2O)			x
C-28			Sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6)			x
C-29	Liquid	Oiliness	Bunkers: fuel oil			x
C-30			Grease			x
C-31			Waste oil (sludge)		x	
C-32			Bilge and/or waste water generated by the after-treatment systems fitted on machineries		x	
C-33			Oily liquid cargo tank residues		x	
C-34			Ballast water		x	
C-35			Raw sewage		x	
C-36			Treated sewage		x	
C-37			Non-oily liquid cargo residues		x	
C-38	Gas	Explosibility/ inflammability	Fuel gas			x

No.	Properties	Goods	Inventory		
			Part I	Part II	Part III
C-39	Solid	Dry cargo residues		x	
C-40		Medical waste/infectious waste		x	
C-41		Incinerator ash[13]		x	
C-42		Garbage		x	
C-43		Fuel tank residues		x	
C-44		Oily solid cargo tank residues		x	
C-45		Oily or chemical contaminated rags		x	
C-46		Batteries (incl. lead acid batteries)			x
C-47		Pesticides/insecticide sprays			x
C-48		Extinguishers			x
C-49		Chemical cleaner (incl. electrical equipment cleaner, carbon remover)			x
C-50		Detergent/bleacher (could be a liquid)			x
C-51		Miscellaneous medicines			x
C-52		Fire fighting clothing and Personal protective equipment			x
C-53		Dry tank residues		x	
C-54		Cargo residues		x	
C-55		Spare parts which contain materials listed in Table A or Table B			x

Table D – Regular consumable goods potentially containing hazardous materials[14]

No.	Properties	Example	Inventory		
			Part I	Part II	Part III
D-1	Electrical and electronic equipment	Computers, refrigerators, printers, scanners, television sets, radio sets, video cameras, video recorders, telephones, consumer batteries, fluorescent lamps, filament bulbs, lamps			x
D-2	Lighting equipment	Fluorescent lamps, filament bulbs, lamps			x
D-3	Non ship-specific furniture, interior and similar equipment	Chairs, sofas, tables, beds, curtains, carpets, garbage bins, bed-linen, pillows, towels, mattresses, storage racks, decoration, bathroom installations, toys, not structurally relevant or integrated artwork			x

13 Definition of garbage is identical to that in MARPOL Annex V. However, incinerator ash is classified separately because it may include hazardous substances or heavy metals.

14 This table does not include ship-specific equipment integral to ship operations, which has to be listed in part I of the inventory.

APPENDIX 2

STANDARD FORMAT OF THE INVENTORY OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS[15]

Part I
Hazardous materials contained in the ship's structure and equipment

I-1 – Paints and coating systems containing materials listed in table A and table B of appendix 1 of these guidelines

No.	Application of paint	Name of paint	Location	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Anti-drumming compound	Primer, xx Co., xx primer #300	Hull part	Lead	35.00	kg	
2	Anti-fouling	xx Co., xx coat #100	Underwater parts	TBT	120.00	kg	

[15] Examples of how to complete the Inventory are provided for guidance purposes only in accordance with paragraph 3.4 of the guidelines.

I-2 – Equipment and machinery containing materials listed in table A and table B of appendix 1 of these guidelines

No.	Name of equipment and machinery	Location	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Parts where used	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Switch board	Engine control room	Cadmium	Housing coating	0.02	kg	
			Mercury	Heat gauge	<0.01	kg	less than 0.01kg
2	~~Diesel engine, xx Co., xx #150~~	~~Engine room~~	~~LeadCadmium~~	~~BearingStarter for blower~~	~~0.02~~	~~kg~~	
3	Diesel engine, xx Co., xx #200	Engine-room	Lead	Starter for blower	0.01	kg	Revised by XXX on Oct. XX, 2008 (revoking No.2)
4	Diesel generator (x 3)	Engine-room	Lead	Ingredient of copper compounds	0.01	kg	
5	Radioactive level gauge	No. 1 Cargo tank	Radioactive substances	Gauge	5 (1.8E+11)	Ci (Bq)	Radionuclides: ^{60}Co

I-3 - Structure and hull containing materials listed in table A and table B of appendix 1 of these guidelines

No.	Name of structural element	Location	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Parts where used	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Wall panel	Accommodation	Asbestos	Insulation	2,500.00	kg	
2	Wall insulation	Engine control room	Lead	Perforated plate	0.01	kg	cover for insulation material
			Asbestos	Insulation	25.00	kg	under perforated plates
3							

Part II
Operationally generated waste

No.	Location[1]	Name of item (classification in appendix 1) and detail (if any) of the item	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Garbage locker	Garbage (food waste)	35.00	kg	
2	Bilge tank	Bilgewater	15.00	m^3	
3	No.1 cargo hold	Dry cargo residues (iron ore)	110.00	kg	
4	No.2 cargo hold	Waste oil (sludge) (crude)	120.00	kg	
5	No.1 ballast tank	Ballast water	2,500.00	m^3	
		Sediments	250.00	kg	

[1] The location of a part II or part III item should be entered in order based on its location, from a lower level to an upper level and from a fore part to an aft part. The location of part I items is recommended to be described similarly, as far as practicable.

Part III
Stores

III-1 - *Stores*

No.	Location[1]	Name of item (classification in appendix 1)	Unit quantity		Figure		Approximate quantity		Remarks[2)]
								m^3	
								kg	
								kg	
									Details are shown in the attached list.
5	Paint stores	Paint, xx Co., #600	20.00	kg	5	pcs	100.00	kg	Cadmium containing.

1 The location of a part II or part III item should be entered in order based on its location, from a lower level to an upper level and from a fore part to an aft part. The location of part I items is recommended to be described similarly, as far as practicable.

2 In column "Remarks" for part III items, if hazardous materials are integrated in products, the approximate amount of the contents should be shown as far as possible.

III-2 – Liquids sealed in ship's machinery and equipment

No.	Type of liquids (classification in appendix 1)	Name of machinery or equipment	Location	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Hydraulic oil	Deck crane hydraulic oil system	Upper deck	15.00	m^3	
		Deck machinery hydraulic oil system	Upper deck and bosun store	200.00	m^3	
		Steering gear hydraulic oil system	Steering gear room	0.55	m^3	
2	Lubricating oil	Main engine system	Engine-room	0.45	m^3	
3	Boiler water treatment	Boiler	Engine-room	0.20	m^3	

III-3 – Gases sealed in ship's machinery and equipment

No.	Type of gases (classification in appendix 1)	Name of machinery or equipment	Location	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	HFC	AC system	AC room	100.00	kg	
2	HFC	Refrigerated provision chamber machine	AC room	50.00	kg	

III-4 – Regular consumable goods potentially containing hazardous materials

No.	Location[16]	Name of item	Quantity	Remarks
1	Accommodation	Refrigerators	1	
2	Accommodation	Personal computers	2	

[16] The location of a part II or part III item should be entered in order based on its location, from a lower level to an upper level and from a fore part to an aft part. The location of part I items is recommended to be described similarly, as far as practicable.

APPENDIX 3

EXAMPLE OF THE DEVELOPMENT PROCESS FOR PART I OF THE INVENTORY FOR NEW SHIPS

1 OBJECTIVE OF THE TYPICAL EXAMPLE

This example has been developed to give guidance and to facilitate understanding of the development process for part I of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials for new ships.

2 DEVELOPMENT FLOW FOR PART I OF THE INVENTORY

Part I of the Inventory should be developed using the following three steps. However, the order of these steps is flexible and can be changed depending on the schedule of shipbuilding:

.1 collection of hazardous materials information;

.2 utilization of hazardous materials information; and

.3 preparation of the Inventory (by filling out standard format).

3 COLLECTION OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS INFORMATION

3.1 Data collection process for hazardous materials

Materials Declaration (MD) and Supplier's Declaration of Conformity (SDoC) for products from suppliers (tier 1 suppliers) should be requested and collected by the shipbuilding yard. Tier 1 suppliers may request from their suppliers (tier 2 suppliers) the relevant information if they cannot develop the MD based on the information available. Thus the collection of data on hazardous materials may involve the entire shipbuilding supply chain (Figure 1).

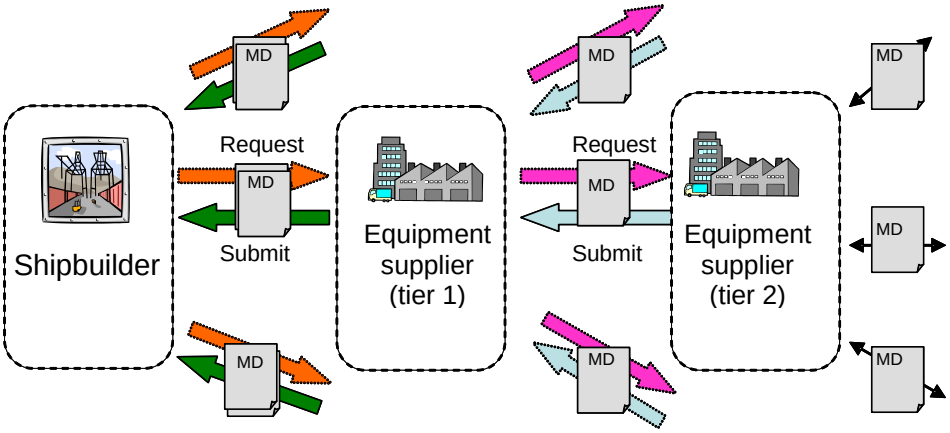


Figure 1 – Process of MD (and SDoC) collection showing involvement of supply chain

3.2 Declaration of hazardous materials

Suppliers should declare whether or not the hazardous materials listed in table A and table B in the MD are present in concentrations above the threshold values specified for each homogeneous material in a product.

3.2.1 *Materials listed in table A*

If one or more materials listed in table A are found to be present in concentrations above the specified threshold value according to the MD, the products which contain these materials shall not be installed on a ship. However, if the materials are used in a product in accordance with an exemption specified by the Convention (e.g. new installations containing hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) before 1 January 2020), the product should be listed in the Inventory.

3.2.2 *Materials listed in table B*

If one or more materials listed in table B are found to be present in concentrations above the specified threshold value according to the MD, the products should be listed in the Inventory.

3.3 Example of homogeneous materials

Figure 2 shows an example of four homogeneous materials which constitute a cable. In this case, sheath, intervention, insulator and conductor are all individual homogeneous materials.

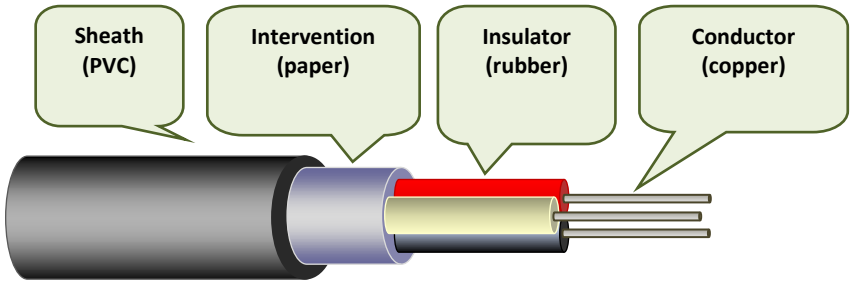


Figure 2 – *Example of homogeneous materials (cable)*

4 UTILIZATION OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS INFORMATION

Products which contain hazardous materials in concentrations above the specified threshold values should be clearly identified in the MD. The approximate quantity of the hazardous materials should be calculated if the mass data for hazardous materials are declared in the MD using a unit which cannot be directly utilized in the Inventory.

5 PREPARATION OF INVENTORY (BY FILLING OUT STANDARD FORMAT)

The information received for the Inventory, as contained in table A and table B of appendix 1 of these guidelines, ought to be structured and utilized according to the following categorization for part I of the Inventory:

Part I-1 Paints and coating systems;

Part I-2 Equipment and machinery; and

Part I-3 Structure and hull.

5.1 "Name of equipment and machinery" column

5.1.1 *Equipment and machinery*

5.1.1.1 The name of each item of equipment or machinery should be entered in this column. If more than one hazardous material is present in the equipment or machinery, the row relating to that equipment or machinery should be appropriately divided such that all of the hazardous materials contained in the piece of equipment or machinery are entered. If more than one item of equipment or machinery is situated in one location, both name and quantity of the equipment or machinery should be entered in the column. Examples are shown in rows 1 and 2 of table 1

5.1.1.2 For identical or common items, such as but not limited to bolts, nuts and valves, there is no need to list each item individually (see Bulk Listing in paragraph 3.2 of the guidelines). An example is shown in row 3 of table 1.

Table 1 – Example showing more than one item of equipment or machinery situated in one location

No.	Name of equipment and machinery	Location	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Parts where used	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Main engine	Engine-room	Lead	Piston pin bush	0.75	kg	
			Mercury	Thermometer charge air temperature	0.01	kg	
2	Diesel generator (x 3)	Engine-room	Mercury	Thermometer	0.03	kg	
3	FC valve (x 100)	Througout the ship	Lead and lead compounds		20.5	kg	

5.1.2 *Pipes and cables*

The names of pipes and of systems, including electric cables, which are often situated in more than one compartment of a ship, should be described using the name of the system concerned. A reference to the compartments where these systems are located is not necessary as long as the system is clearly identified and properly named.

5.2 "Approximate quantity" column

The standard unit for approximate quantity of solid hazardous materials should be kg. If the hazardous materials are liquids or gases, the standard unit should be either m^3 or kg. An approximate quantity should be rounded up to at least two significant figures. If the hazardous material is less than 10 g, the description of the quantity should read "<0.01 kg".

Table 2 – Example of a switchboard

No.	Name of equipment and machinery	Location	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Parts where used	Approximate quantity		Remarks
	Switchboard	Engine control room	Cadmium	Housing coating	0.02	kg	
			Mercury	Heat gauge	<0.01	kg	less than 0.01 kg

5.3 "Location" column

5.3.1 *Example of a location list*

It is recommended to prepare a location list which covers all compartments of a ship based on the ship's plans (e.g. general arrangement, engine-room arrangement, accommodation and tank plan) and on other documentation on board, including certificates or spare parts' lists. The description of the location should be based on a location such as a deck or room to enable easy identification. The name of the location should correspond to the ship's plans so as to ensure consistency between the Inventory and the ship's plans. Examples of names of locations are shown in table 3. For bulk listings, the locations of the items or materials may be generalized. For example, the location may only include the primary classification such as "Throughout the ship" as shown in the table 3 below.

Table 3 – Examples of location names

(A) Primary classification	(B) Secondary classification	(C) Name of location
Throughout the ship		
Hull part	Fore part	Bosun store
		…
	Cargo part	No.1 cargo hold/tank
		No.1 garage deck
		…
	Tank part	Fore peak tank
		No.1 WBT
		No.1 FOT
		…
		Aft Peak Tank
	Aft part	Steering gear room
		Emergency fire pump space
		…
	Superstructure	Accommodation
		Compass deck
		Nav. bridge deck
		…
		Wheel house
		Engine control room
		Cargo control room
		…
	Deck house	Deck house
		…
(A) Primary classification	(B) Secondary classification	(C) Name of location
Machinery part	Engine-room	Engine-room
		Main floor
		2nd floor
		…
		Generator space/room
		Purifier space/room
		Shaft space/room
		Engine casing
		Funnel
		Engine control room
		…
	Pump-room	Pump-room
		…
Exterior part	Superstructure	Superstructure
	Upper deck	Upper deck
	Hull shell	Hull shell
		bottom
		under waterline
		…

5.3.2 *Description of location of pipes and electrical systems*

5.3.2.1 Locations of pipes and systems, including electrical systems and cables situated in more than one compartment of a ship, should be described for each system concerned. If they are situated in a number of compartments, the most practical of the following two options should be used:

.1 listing of all components in the column; or

.2 description of the location of the system using an expression such as those shown under "primary classification" and "secondary classification" in Table 3.

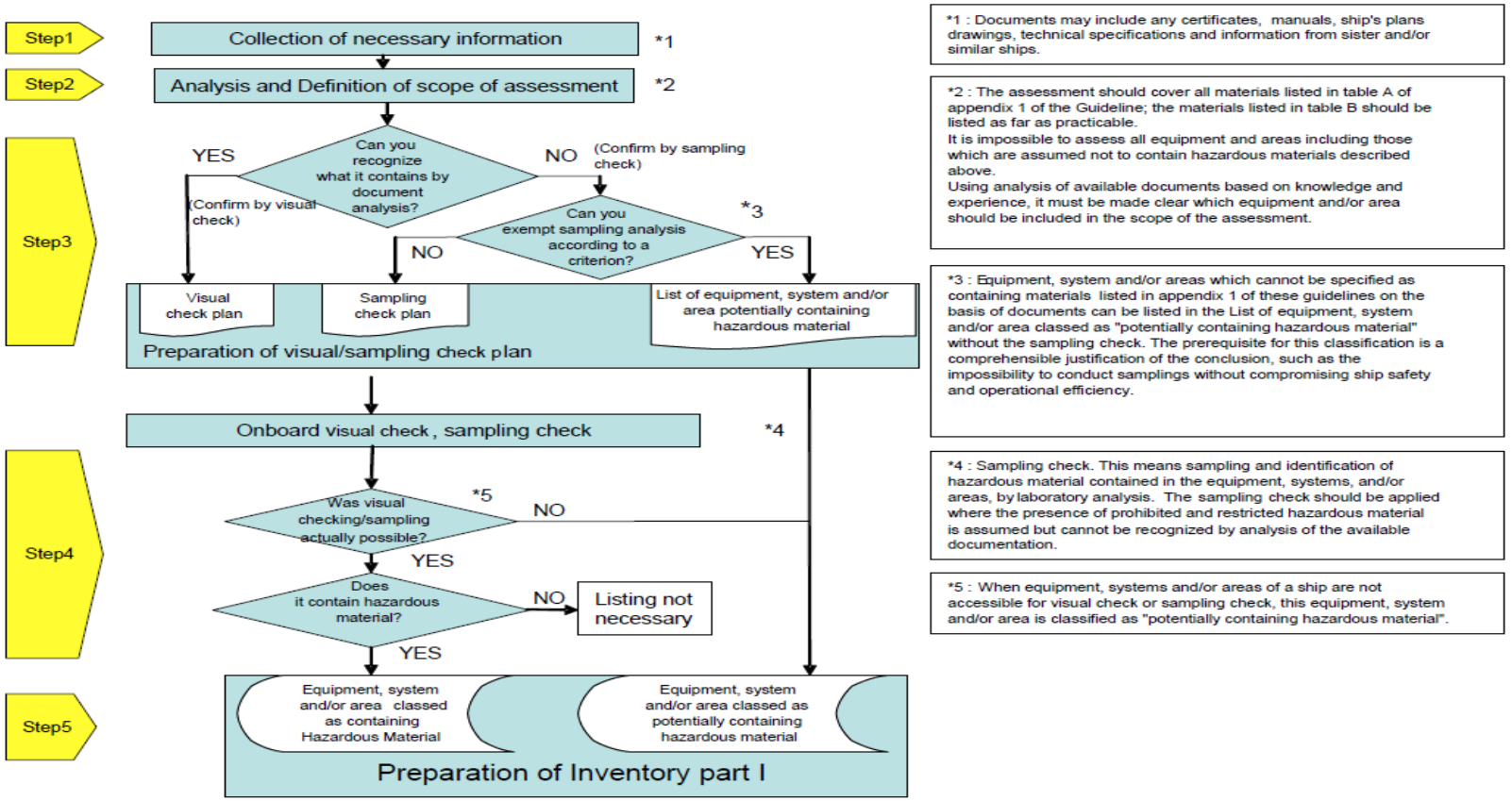
5.3.2.2 A typical description of a pipe system is shown in table 4.

Table 4 – Example of description of a pipe system

No.	Name of equipment and machinery	Location	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Parts where used	Approximate quantity		Remarks
	Ballast water system	Engine-room, Hold parts					

APPENDIX 4

FLOW DIAGRAM FOR DEVELOPING PART I OF THE INVENTORY FOR EXISTING SHIPS



*1 : Documents may include any certificates, manuals, ship's plans drawings, technical specifications and information from sister and/or similar ships.

*2 : The assessment should cover all materials listed in table A of appendix 1 of the Guideline; the materials listed in table B should be listed as far as practicable.
It is impossible to assess all equipment and areas including those which are assumed not to contain hazardous materials described above.
Using analysis of available documents based on knowledge and experience, it must be made clear which equipment and/or area should be included in the scope of the assessment.

*3 : Equipment, system and/or areas which cannot be specified as containing materials listed in appendix 1 of these guidelines on the basis of documents can be listed in the List of equipment, system and/or area classed as "potentially containing hazardous material" without the sampling check. The prerequisite for this classification is a comprehensible justification of the conclusion, such as the impossibility to conduct samplings without compromising ship safety and operational efficiency.

*4 : Sampling check. This means sampling and identification of hazardous material contained in the equipment, systems, and/or areas, by laboratory analysis. The sampling check should be applied where the presence of prohibited and restricted hazardous material is assumed but cannot be recognized by analysis of the available documentation.

*5 : When equipment, systems and/or areas of a ship are not accessible for visual check or sampling check, this equipment, system and/or area is classified as "potentially containing hazardous material".

APPENDIX 5

EXAMPLE OF THE DEVELOPMENT PROCESS FOR PART I OF THE INVENTORY FOR EXISTING SHIPS

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 In order to develop part I of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials for existing ships, documents of the individual ship as well as the knowledge and experience of specialist personnel (experts) is required. An example of the development process for Part I of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials for existing ships is useful to understand the basic steps as laid out in the guidelines and to ensure a unified application. However, attention should be paid to variations in different types of ships[17].

1.2 Compilation of part I of the Inventory of Hazardous Material for existing ships involves the following five steps which are described in paragraph 4.2 and appendix 4 of these guidelines.

Step 1: Collection of necessary information;

Step 2: Assessment of collected information;

Step 3: Preparation of visual/sampling check plan;

Step 4: Onboard visual/sampling check; and

Step 5: Preparation of part I of the Inventory and related documentation.

2 STEP 1 – COLLECTION OF NECESSARY INFORMATION

2.1 Sighting of available documents

A practical first step is to collect detailed documents for the ship. The shipowner should try to collate documents normally retained on board the ship or by the shipping company as well as relevant documents that the shipyard, manufacturers, or classification society may have. The following documents should be used when available:

.1 Ship's specification
.2 General Arrangement
.3 Machinery Arrangement
.4 Spare Parts and Tools List
.5 Piping Arrangement
.6 Accommodation Plan
.7 Fire Control Plan
.8 Fire Protection Plan
.9 Insulation Plan (Hull and Machinery)
.10 International Anti-Fouling System Certificate
.11 Related manuals and drawings
.12 Information from other inventories and/or sister or similar ships, machinery, equipment, materials and coatings
.13 Results of previous visual/sampling checks and other analysis

[17] The example of a 28,000 gross tonnage bulk carrier constructed in 1985 is used in this appendix.

2.1.2 If the ship has undergone conversions or major repair work, it is necessary to identify as far as possible the modifications from the initial design and specification of the ship.

2.2 Indicative list

2.2.1 It is impossible to check all equipment, systems, and/or areas on board the ship to determine the presence or absence of hazardous materials. The total number of parts on board may exceed several thousand. In order to take a practical approach, an indicative list should be prepared that identifies the equipment, system, and/or area on board that is presumed to contain hazardous materials. Field interviews with the shipyard and suppliers may be necessary to prepare such lists. A typical example of an indicative list is shown below.

2.2.2 *Materials to be checked and documented*

Hazardous Materials, as identified in appendix 1 of these guidelines, should be listed in part I of the Inventory for existing ships. Appendix 1 of the guidelines contains all the materials concerned. Table A shows those which are required to be listed and table B shows those which should be listed as far as practicable.

2.2.3 *Materials listed in table A*

2.2.3.1 Table A lists the following four materials:

.1 Asbestos
.2 Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)
.3 Ozone depleting substances
.4 Anti-fouling systems containing organotin compounds as a biocide

2.2.3.2 *Asbestos*

Field interviews were conducted with over 200 Japanese shipyards and suppliers regarding the use of asbestos in production. Indicative lists for asbestos developed on the basis of this research are shown below:

Structure and/or equipment	Component
Propeller shafting	Packing with low pressure hydraulic piping flange
	Packing with casing
	Clutch
	Brake lining
	Synthetic stern tubes
Diesel engine	Packing with piping flange
	Lagging material for fuel pipe
	Lagging material for exhaust pipe
	Lagging material turbocharger
Turbine engine	Lagging material for casing
	Packing with flange of piping and valve for steam line, exhaust line and drain line
	Lagging material for piping and valve of steam line, exhaust line and drain line

Structure and/or equipment	Component
Boiler	Insulation in combustion chamber
	Packing for casing door
	Lagging material for exhaust pipe
	Gasket for manhole
	Gasket for hand hole
	Gas shield packing for soot blower and other hole
	Packing with flange of piping and valve for steam line, exhaust line, fuel line and drain line
	Lagging material for piping and valve of steam line, exhaust line, fuel line and drain line
Exhaust gas economizer	Packing for casing door
	Packing with manhole
	Packing with hand hole
	Gas shield packing for soot blower
	Packing with flange of piping and valve for steam line, exhaust line, fuel line and drain line
	Lagging material for piping and valve of steam line, exhaust line, fuel line and drain line
Incinerator	Packing for casing door
	Packing with manhole
	Packing with hand hole
	Lagging material for exhaust pipe
Auxiliary machinery (pump, compressor, oil purifier, crane)	Packing for casing door and valve
	Gland packing
	Brake lining
Heat exchanger	Packing with casing
	Gland packing for valve
	Lagging material and insulation
Valve	Gland packing with valve, sheet packing with piping flange
	Gasket with flange of high pressure and/or high temperature
Pipe, duct	Lagging material and insulation
Tank (fuel tank, hot water, tank, condenser), other equipment (fuel strainer, lubricant oil strainer)	Lagging material and insulation
Electric equipment	Insulation material
Airborne asbestos	Wall, ceiling
Ceiling, floor and wall in accommodation area	Ceiling, floor, wall
Fire door	Packing, construction and insulation of the fire door
Inert gas system	Packing for casing, etc.
Air-conditioning system	Sheet packing, lagging material for piping and flexible joint

Structure and/or equipment	Component
Miscellaneous	Ropes
	Thermal insulating materials
	Fire shields/fire proofing
	Space/duct insulation
	Electrical cable materials
	Brake linings
	Floor tiles/deck underlay
	Steam/water/vent flange gaskets
	Adhesives/mastics/fillers
	Sound damping
	Moulded plastic products
	Sealing putty
	Shaft/valve packing
	Electrical bulkhead penetration packing
	Circuit breaker arc chutes
	Pipe hanger inserts
	Weld shop protectors/burn covers
	Fire-fighting blankets/clothing/equipment
	Concrete ballast

2.2.3.3 *Polychlorinated biphenyl (PCBs)*

Worldwide restriction of PCBs began on 17 May 2004 as a result of the implementation of the Stockholm Convention, which aims to eliminate or restrict the production and use of persistent organic pollutants. In Japan, domestic control began in 1973, with the prohibition of all activities relating to the production, use and import of PCBs. Japanese suppliers can provide accurate information concerning their products. The indicative list of PCBs has been developed as shown below:

Equipment	**Component of equipment**
Transformer	Insulating oil
Condenser	Insulating oil
Fuel heater	Heating medium
Electric cable	Covering, insulating tape
Lubricating oil	
Heat oil	Thermometers, sensors, indicators
Rubber/felt gaskets	
Rubber hose	
Plastic foam insulation	
Thermal insulating materials	
Voltage regulators	
Switches/reclosers/bushings	
Electromagnets	
Adhesives/tapes	
Surface contamination of machinery	
Oil-based paint	
Caulking	
Rubber isolation mounts	
Pipe hangers	

Equipment	Component of equipment
Light ballasts (component within fluorescent light fixtures)	
Plasticizers	
Felt under septum plates on top of hull bottom	

2.2.3.4 *Ozone depleting substances*

The indicative list for ozone depleting substances is shown below. Ozone depleting substances have been controlled according to the Montreal Protocol and MARPOL Convention. Although almost all substances have been banned since 1996, HCFC can still be used until 2020.

Materials	Component of equipment	Period for use of ODS in Japan
CFCs (R11, R12)	Refrigerant for refrigerators	Until 1996
CFCs	Urethane formed material	Until 1996
	Blowing agent for insulation of LNG carriers	Until 1996
Halons	Extinguishing agent	Until 1994
Other fully halogenated CFCs	The possibility of usage in ships is low	Until 1996
Carbon tetrachloride	The possibility of usage in ships is low	Until 1996
1,1,1-Trichloroethane (methyl chloroform)	The possibility of usage in ships is low	Until 1996
HCFC (R22, R141b)	Refrigerant for refrigerating machine	It is possible to use it until 2020
HBFC	The possibility of usage in ships is low	Until 1996
Methyl bromide	The possibility of usage in ships is low	Until 2005

2.2.3.5 *Organotin compounds*

Organotin compounds include tributyl tins (TBT), triphenyl tins (TPT) and tributyl tin oxide (TBTO). Organotin compounds have been used as anti-fouling paint on ships' bottoms and the International Convention on the Control of Harmful Anti-Fouling Systems on Ships (AFS Convention) stipulates that all ships shall not apply or re-apply organotin compounds after 1 January 2003, and that, after 1 January 2008, all ships shall either not bear such compounds on their hulls or shall bear a coating that forms a barrier preventing such compounds from leaching into the sea. The above-mentioned dates may have been extended by permission of the Administration bearing in mind that the AFS Convention entered into force on 17 September 2008.

2.2.4 ***Materials listed in table B***

For existing ships it is not obligatory for materials listed in table B to be listed in part I of the Inventory. However, if they can be identified in a practical way, they should be listed in the Inventory, because the information will be used to support ship recycling processes. The Indicative list of materials listed in table B is shown below:

Materials	Component of equipment
Cadmium and cadmium compounds	Plating film, bearing
Hexavalent chromium compounds	Plating film
Mercury and mercury compounds	Fluorescent light, mercury lamp, mercury cell, liquid-level switch, gyro compass, thermometer, measuring tool, manganese cell, pressure sensors, light fittings, electrical switches, fire detectors
Lead and lead compounds	Corrosion resistant primer, solder (almost all electric appliances contain solder), paints, preservative coatings, cable insulation, lead ballast, generators
Polybrominated biphenyls (PBBs)	Non-flammable plastics
Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE)	Non-flammable plastics
Polychlorinated naphthalenes	Paint, lubricating oil
Radioactive substances	Refer to appendix 10
Certain shortchain chlorinated paraffins	Non-flammable plastics

3 STEP 2 – ASSESSMENT OF COLLECTED INFORMATION

Preparation of a checklist is an efficient method for developing the Inventory for existing ships in order to clarify the results of each step. Based on collected information including the indicative list mentioned in step 1, all equipment, systems, and/or areas on board assumed to contain hazardous materials listed in tables A and B should be included in the checklist. Each listed equipment, system, and/or area on board should be analysed and assessed for its hazardous materials content.

The existence and volume of hazardous materials may be judged and calculated from the Spare parts and tools list and the maker's drawings. The existence of asbestos contained in floors, ceilings and walls may be identified from Fire Protection Plans, while the existence of TBT in coatings can be identified from the International Anti-Fouling System Certificate, Coating scheme and the History of Paint.

Example of weight calculation

No.	Hazardous Materials	Location/equipment/ component	Reference	Calculation
1.1-2	TBT	Flat bottom/paint	History of coatings	
1.2-1	Asbestos	Main engine/ exh. pipe packing	Spare parts and tools list	250 g x 14 sheet = 3.50 kg
1.2-3	HCFC	Ref. provision plant	Maker's drawings	20 kg x 1 cylinder = 20 kg
1.2-4	Lead	Batteries	Maker's drawings	6kg x 16 unit = 96 kg
1.3-1	Asbestos	Engine-room ceiling	Accommodation plan	

When a component or coating is determined to contain hazardous materials, a "Y" should be entered in the column for "Result of document analysis" in the checklist, to denote "Contained". Likewise, when an item is determined not to contain Hazardous Materials, the entry "N" should be made in the column to denote "Not contained". When a determination cannot be made as to the hazardous materials content, the column should be completed with the entry "Unknown".

Checklist (step 2)

Analysis and definition of scope of assessment for "Sample Ship"

No.	Table A/B	Hazardous materials *1	Location	Name of equipment	Component	Quantity			Manufacturer/brand name	Result of documents analysis *2	Procedure of check *3	Result of check *4	Reference/DWG No.
						Unit (kg)	No.	Total (kg)					
[Inventory part I-1.1]													
1	A	TBT	Top side	Painting and coating	A/F Paints			NIL	Paints Co./marine P1000	N			・On Aug., 200X, Sealer Coat applied to all over submerged area before tin-free coating.
2	A	TBT	Flat Bottom				3000m^2		Unknown AF	Unknown			
[Inventory part I-1.2]													
1	A	Asbestos	Lower deck	Main engine	Exh. pipe packing	0.25	14		Diesel Co.	Y			M-100
2	A	Asbestos	3rd deck	Aux.boiler	Lagging		12		Unknown lagging	Unknown			M-300
3	A	Asbestos	Engine room	Piping/flange	Packing					PCHM			
4	A	HCFC	2nd deck	Ref. provision plant	Refrigerant(R22)	20.00	1		Reito Co.	Y			Maker's dwg
5	B	Lead	Nav. Br. deck	Batteries		6	16		Denchi Co.	Y			E-300
[Inventory part I-1.3]													
1	A	Asbestos	Upper deck	Back deck ceilings	Engine room ceiling		20m^2		Unknown ceiling	Unknown			O-25

Notes

*1 Hazardous materirials: material classification

*2 Result of documents analysis: Y=Contained, N=Not contained, Unknown, PCHM=Potentially containing hazardous material

*3 Procedure of Check:. V=Visual check, S=Sampling check

*4 Result of Check: Y=Contained, N=Not contained, PCHM=Potentially containing hazardous material

4 STEP 3 – PREPARATION OF VISUAL/SAMPLING CHECK PLAN

4.1 Each item classified as "Contained" or "Not contained" in step 2 should be subjected to a visual check on board, and the entry "V" should be made in the "Check procedure" column to denote "Visual check".

4.2 For each item categorized as "unknown", a decision should be made as to whether to apply a sampling check. However, any item categorized as "unknown" may be classed as "potentially containing hazardous material" provided comprehensive justification is given, or if it can be assumed that there will be little or no effect on disassembly as a unit and later ship recycling and disposal operations. For example, in the following checklist, in order to carry out a sampling check for "Packing with aux. boiler" the shipowner needs to disassemble the auxiliary boiler in a repair yard. The costs of this check are significantly higher than the later disposal costs at a ship recycling facility. In this case, therefore, the classification as "potentially containing hazardous material" is justifiable.

Checklist (step 3)

Analysis and definition of scope of assessment for "Sample Ship"

No.	Table A/B	Hazardous materials *1	Location	Name of equipment	Component	Quantity			Manufacturer/brand name	Result of documents analysis *2	Procedure of check *3	Result of check *4	Reference/DWG No.
						Unit (kg)	No.	Total (kg)					
[Inventory part I-1.1]													
1	A	TBT	Top side	Painting & Coating	A/F Paints			NIL	Paints Co./marine P1000	N	V		・On Aug., 200X, Sealer Coat applied to all over submerged area before tin-free coating.
2	A	TBT	Flat bottom				3000m^2		Unknown AF	Unknown	S		
[Inventory Part I-1.2]													
1	A	Asbestos	Lower deck	Main engine	Exh. pipe packing	0.25	14		Diesel Co.	Y	V		M-100
2	A	Asbestos	3rd deck	Aux.boiler	Lagging		12		Unknown lagging	Unknown	S		M-300
3	A	Asbestos	Engine room	Piping/flange	Packing					PCHM	V		
4	A	HCFC	2nd deck	Ref. provision plant	Refrigerant(R22)	20.00	1		Reito Co.	Y	V		Maker's dwg
5	B	Lead	Nav. Br. deck	Batteries		6	16		Denchi Co.	Y	V		E-300
[Inventory Part I-1.3]													
1	A	Asbestos	Upper deck	Back deck ceilings	Engine room ceiling		20m^2		Unknown ceiling	Unknown	S		O-25

Notes

*1 Hazardous materirials: material classification

*2 Result of documents analysis: Y=Contained, N=Not contained, Unknown, PCHM=Potentially containing hazardous material

*3 Procedure of check:. V=Visual check, S=Sampling check

*4 Result of check: Y=Contained, N=Not contained, PCHM=Potentially containing hazardous material

4.3 Before any visual/sampling check on board is conducted, a "visual/sampling check plan" should be prepared. An example of such a plan is shown below.

4.4 To prevent any incidents during the visual/sampling check, a schedule should be established to eliminate interference with other ongoing work on board. To prevent potential exposure to Hazardous Materials during the visual/sampling check, safety precautions should be in place on board. For example, sampling of potential asbestos containing materials could release fibres into the atmosphere. Therefore, appropriate personnel safety and containment procedures should be implemented prior to sampling.

4.5 Items listed in the visual/sampling check should be arranged in sequence so that the onboard check is conducted in a structured manner (e.g. from a lower level to an upper level and from a fore part to an aft part).

Example of visual/sampling check plan

Name of ship	XXXXXXXXXX
IMO Number	XXXXXXXXXX
Gross Tonnage	28,000 GT
L x B x D	xxx.xx × xx.xx × xx.xx m
Date of delivery	dd.mm.1987
Shipowner	XXXXXXXXXX
Contact point (Address, Telephone, Fax, Email)	XXXXXXXXXX Tel: XXXX-XXXX Fax: XXXX-XXXX Email: abcdefg@hijk.co.net
Check schedule	Visual check： dd, mm, 20XX Sampling check：dd, mm, 20XX
Site of check	XX shipyard, No. Dock
In charge of check	XXXX XXXX
Check engineer	XXXX XXXX, YYYY YYYY, ZZZZ ZZZZ
Sampling engineer	Person with specialized knowledge of sampling
Sampling method and anti-scattering measure for asbestos	Wet the sampling location prior to cutting and allow it to harden after cutting to prevent scatter. Notes: Workers performing sampling activities shall wear protective equipment.
Sampling of fragments of paints	Paints suspected to contain TBT should be collected and analysed from load line, directly under bilge keel and flat bottom near amidships.
Laboratory	QQQQ QQQQ
Chemical analysis method	Method by ISO/DIS 22262-1 Bulk materials – Part 1: Sampling and qualitative determination of asbestos in commercial bulk materials and ISO/CD 22262-2 Bulk materials – Part 2: Quantitative determination of asbestos by gravimetric and microscopic methods. ICP Luminous analysis (TBT)
Location of visual/sampling check	Refer to lists for visual/sampling check

Listing for equipment, system and/or area for visual check
See attached "Analysis and definition of scope of investigation for sample ship"

List of equipment, system and/or area for sampling check				
Location	**Equipment, machinery and/or zone**	**Name of parts**	**Materials**	**Result of doc. checking**
Upper Deck	Back deck ceilings	Engine-room ceiling	Asbestos	Unknown
Engine-room	Exhaust gas pipe	Insulation	Asbestos	Unknown
Engine-room	Pipe/flange	Gasket	Asbestos	Unknown
Refer to attached "Analysis and definition of scope of investigation for sample ship" and "Location plan of hazardous materials for sample ship"				

List of equipment, system and/or area classed as PCHM				
Location	**Equipment, machinery and/or zone**	**Name of part**	**Material**	**Result of doc. checking**
Floor	Propeller cap	Gasket	Asbestos	PCHM
Engine-room	Air operated shut-off valve	Gland packing	Asbestos	PCHM
Refer to attached "Analysis and definition of scope of investigation for sample ship" and "Location plan of hazardous materials for sample ship"				

This plan is established in accordance with the guidelines for the development of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials

Prepared by： XXXX XXXX

Tel.： YYYY-YYYY

Email： XXXX@ZZZZ.co.net

・Document check・date/place：
dd, mm, 20XX at XX Lines Co. Ltd.

・Preparation date of plan：dd. mm, 20XX

5 STEP 4 – ONBOARD VISUAL/SAMPLING CHECK

5.1 The visual/sampling check should be conducted according to the plan. Check points should be marked in the ship's plan or recorded with photographs.

5.2 A person taking samples should be protected by the appropriate safety equipment relevant to the suspected type of hazardous materials encountered. Appropriate safety precautions should also be in place for passengers, crewmembers and other persons on board, to minimize the potential exposure to hazardous materials. Safety precautions could include the posting of signs or other verbal or written notification for personnel to avoid such areas during sampling. The personnel taking samples should ensure compliance with relevant national regulations.

5.3 The results of visual/sampling checks should be recorded in the checklist. Any equipment, systems and/or areas of the ship that cannot be accessed for checks should be classified as "potentially containing hazardous material". In this case, the entry in the "Result of check" column should be "PCHM".

6 STEP 5 – PREPARATION OF PART I OF THE INVENTORY AND RELATED DOCUMENTATION

6.1 *Development of part I of the Inventory*

The results of the check and the estimated quantity of hazardous materials should be recorded on the checklist. Part I of the Inventory should be developed with reference to the checklist.

6.2 *Development of location diagram of hazardous materials*

With respect to part I of the Inventory, the development of a location diagram of hazardous materials is recommended in order to help the ship recycling facility gain a visual understanding of the Inventory.

Checklist (step 4 and step 5)

Analysis and definition of scope of assessment for "Sample Ship"

No.	Table A/B	Hazardous materials *1	Location	Name of equipment	Component	Quantity			Manufacturer/brand name	Result of documents analysis *2	Procedure of check *3	Result of check *4	Reference/DWG No.
						Unit (kg)	No.	Total (kg)					
[Inventory part I-1.1]													
1	A	TBT	Top side	Painting & Coating	A/F Paints			NIL	Paints Co./marine P1000	N	V	N	・On Aug., 200X, Sealer Coat applied to all over submerged area before tin-free coating.
2	A	TBT	Flat Bottom			0.02	3000m^2	60.00	Unknown AF	Unknown	S	Y	
[Inventory part I-1.2]													
1	A	Asbestos	Lower deck	Main engine	Exh. pipe packing	0.25	14	3.50	Diesel Co.	Y	V	Y	M-100
2	A	Asbestos	3rd deck	Aux. boiler	Lagging		12		Unknown lagging	Unknown	S	N	M-300
3	A	Asbestos	Engine room	Piping/flange	Packing					PCHM	V	PCHM	
4	A	HCFC	2nd deck	Ref. provision plant	Refrigerant(R22)	20.00	1	20.00	Reito Co.	Y	V	Y	Maker's dwg
5	B	Lead	Nav. Br. deck	Batteries		6	16	96.00	Denchi Co.	Y	V	Y	E-300
[Inventory part I-1.3]													
1	A	Asbestos	Upp.deck	Back deck ceilings	Engine room ceiling	0.19	20m^2	3.80	Unknown ceiling	Unknown	S	Y	O-25

Notes

*1 Hazardous materirials: material classification

*2 Result of documents analysis: Y=Contained, N=Not contained, Unknown, PCHM=Potentially containing hazardous material

*3 Procedure of check:. V=Visual check, S=Sampling check

*4 Result of check: Y=Contained, N=Not contained, PCHM=Potentially containing hazardous material

Example of the Inventory for existing ships

Inventory of Hazardous Materials for "Sample Ship"

Particulars of the "Sample Ship"

Distinctive number or letters	XXXXNNN
Port of registry	Port of World
Type of vessel	Bulk carrier
Gross Tonnage	28,000 GT
IMO number	NNNNNNN
Name of shipbuilder	xx Shipbuilding Co. Ltd
Name of shipowner	yy Maritime SA
Date of delivery	MM/DD/1988

This inventory was developed in accordance with the guidelines for the development of the Inventory of Hazardous Materials.

Attachment:

1: Inventory of Hazardous Materials

2: Assessment of collected information

3: Location diagram of Hazardous Materials

Prepared by XYZ (Name & address) (dd/mm/20XX)

Inventory of Hazardous Materials: "Sample Ship"

Part I – *hazardous materials contained in the ship's structure and equipment*

I-1 Paints and coating systems containing materials listed in Table A and Table B of appendix 1 of the guidelines

No.	Application of paint	Name of paint	Location*	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	AF paint	Unknown paints	Flat bottom	TBT	60.00	kg	Confirmed by sampling
2							
3							

I-2 Equipment and machinery containing materials listed in Table A and Table B of appendix 1 of the guidelines

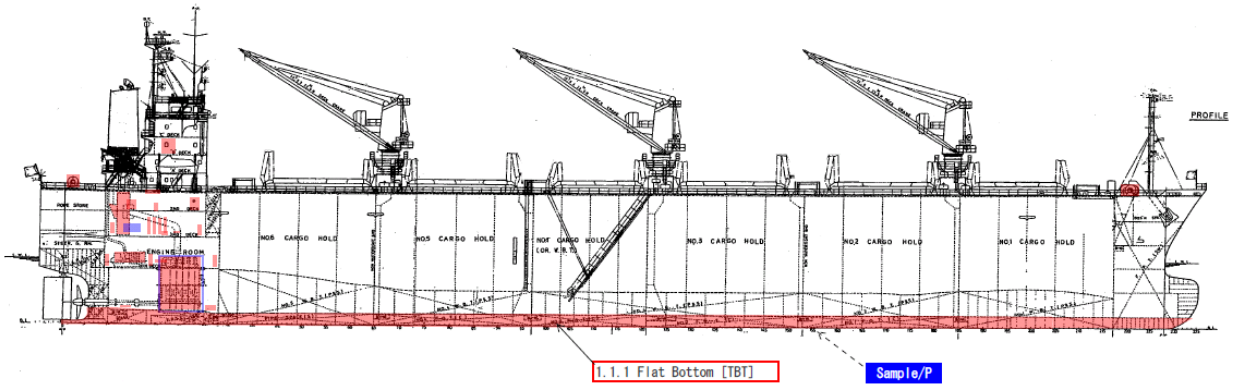
No.	Name of equipment and machinery	Location *1	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Parts where used	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Main engine	Lower floor	Asbestos	Exh. pipe packing	3.50	kg	
2	Aux. boiler	3rd deck	Asbestos	Unknown packing	10.00	kg	PCHM (potentially containing Hazardous Material)
3	Piping/flange	Engine-room	Asbestos	Packing	50.00	kg	PCHM
4	Ref. provision plant	2nd deck	HCFC	Refrigerant (R22)	20.00	kg	
5	Batteries	Navig. Bridge deck	Lead		96.00	kg	

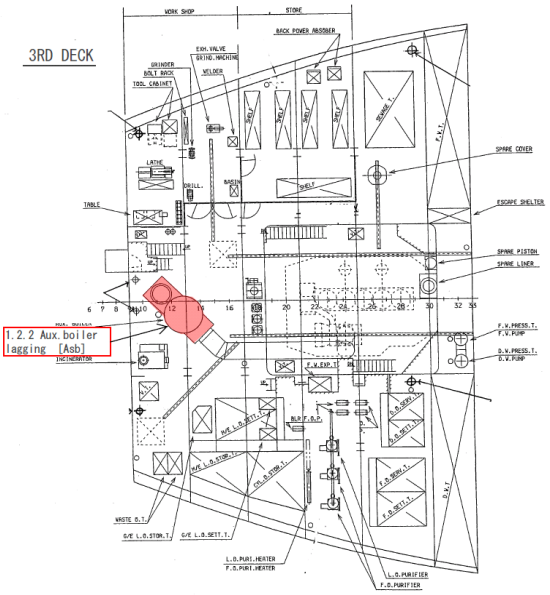
I-3 Structure and hull containing materials listed in Table A and Table B of appendix 1 of the guidelines

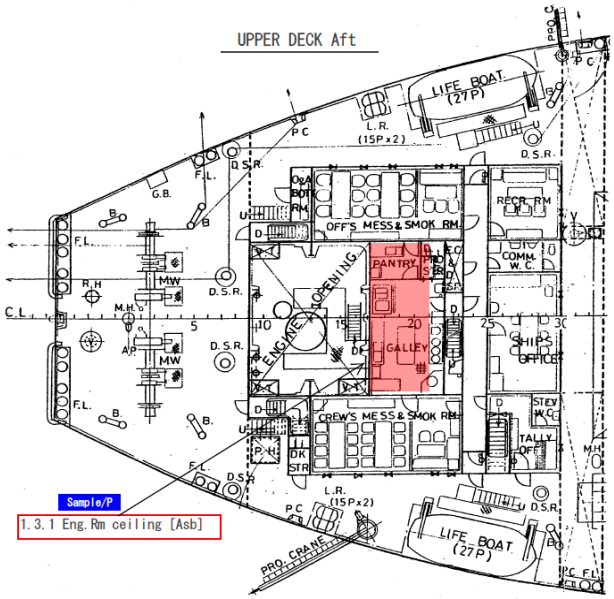
No.	Name of structural element	Location *1	Materials (classification in appendix 1)	Parts where used	Approximate quantity		Remarks
1	Back deck ceiling	Upper deck	Asbestos	Engine-room ceiling (A class)	3.80	kg	Confirmed by sampling
2							
3							

* Each item should be entered in order based on its location, from a lower level to an upper level and from a fore part to an aft part.

Example of location diagram of hazardous materials







APPENDIX 6

FORM OF MATERIAL DECLARATION

<Date of declaration>

Date	

<MD ID number>

MD- ID-No.	

<Other information>

Remark 1	
Remark 2	
Remark 3	

<Supplier (respondent) information>

Company name	
Division name	
Address	
Contact person	
Telephone number	
Fax number	
Email address	
SDoC ID no.	

<Product information>

Product name	Product number	Delivered unit			Product information
		Amount	Unit		

<Materials information>

		Unit
This materials information shows the amount of hazardous materials contained in	1	

(unit: piece, kg, m, m^2, m^3, etc.) of the product.

Table	Material name		Threshold value	Present above threshold value	If yes, material mass		If yes, information on where it is used
				Yes / No	Mass	Unit	
Table A (materials listed in appendix 1 of the Convention)	Asbestos	Asbestos	0.1%[18]				
	Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)	Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)	50 mg/kg				
	Ozone depleting substance	Chlorofluorocaobons (CFCs)	no threshold value				
		Halons					
		Other fully halogenated CFCs					
		Carbon tetrachloride					
		1,1,1-Trichloroethane					
		Hydrochlorofluorocaobons					
		Hydrobromofluorocaobons					
		Methyl bromide					
		Bromochloromethane					
	Anti-fouling systems containing organotin compounds as a biocide		2,500 mg total tin/kg				

[18] In accordance with regulation 4 of the Convention, for all ships, new installation of materials which contain asbestos shall be prohibited. According to the UN recommendation "Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (GHS)" adopted by the United Nations Economic and Social Council's Sub-Committee of Experts on the Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (UNSCEGHS), the UN'S Sub-Committee of Experts, in 2002 (published in 2003), carcinogenic mixtures classified as Category 1A (including asbestos mixtures) under the GHS are required to be labelled as carcinogenic if the ratio is more than 0.1%. However, if 1% is applied, this threshold value should be recorded in the Inventory and, if available, the Material Declaration and can be applied not later than five years after the entry into force of the Convention. The threshold value of 0.1% need not be retroactively applied to those Inventories and Material Declarations.

Table	Material name	Threshold value	Present above threshold value	If yes, material mass		If yes, information on where it is used
			Yes / No	Mass	Unit	
Table B (materials listed in appendix 2 of the Convention)	Cadmium and cadmium compounds	100 mg/kg				
	Hexavalent chromium and hexavalent chromium compounds	1,000 mg/kg				
	Lead and lead compounds	1,000 mg/kg				
	Mercury and mercury compounds	1,000 mg/kg				
	Polybrominated biphenyl (PBBs)	50 mg/kg				
	Polybrominated dephenyl ethers (PBDEs)	1,000 mg/kg				
	Polychloronaphthalenes (Cl >= 3)	50 mg/kg				
	Radioactive substances	no threshold value				
	Certain shortchain chlorinated paraffins	1%				

APPENDIX 7

FORM OF SUPPLIER'S DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

SUPPLIER'S DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY FOR MATERIAL DECLARATION MANAGEMENT

1 Identification number _____

2 Issuer's name _____

Issuer's address _____

3 Object(s) of the declaration _____

_____

_____

4 The object(s) of the declaration described above is in conformity with the following documents :

	Document No.	Title	Edition/date of issue
5	_____	_____	_____
	_____	_____	_____
	_____	_____	_____

6 Additional information _____

_____

Signed for and on behalf of

_____

_____

(place and date of issue)

7 _____ _____

(name, function) *(signature)*

APPENDIX 8

EXAMPLES OF TABLE A AND TABLE B MATERIALS OF APPENDIX 1 WITH CAS NUMBERS

This list was developed with reference to Joint Industry Guide No.101. This list is not exhaustive; it represents examples of chemicals with known CAS numbers and may require periodical updating.

Table	Material Category	Substances	CAS Numbers
Table A (materials listed in appendix 1 of the Convention)	Asbestos	Asbestos	1332-21-4
		Actinolite	77536-66-4
		Amosite (Grunerite)	12172-73-5
		Anthophyllite	77536-67-5
		Chrysotile	12001-29-5
		Crocidolite	12001-28-4
		Tremolite	77536-68-6
	Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)	Polychlorinated biphenyls	1336-36-3
		Aroclor	12767-79-2
		Chlorodiphenyl (Aroclor 1260)	11096-82-5
		Kanechlor 500	27323-18-8
		Aroclor 1254	11097-69-1
	Ozone depleting substances/ isomers (they may contain isomers that are not listed here)	Trichlorofluoromethane (CFC11)	75-69-4
		Dichlorodifluoromethane (CFC12)	75-71-8
		Chlorotrifluoromethane (CFC 13)	75-72-9
		Pentachlorofluoroethane (CFC 111)	354-56-3
		Tetrachlorodifluoroethane (CFC 112)	76-12-0
		Trichlorotrifluoroethane (CFC 113)	354-58-5
		1,1,2 Trichloro-1,2,2 trifluoroethane	76-13-1
		Dichlorotetrafluoroethane (CFC 114)	76-14-2
		Monochloropentafluoroethane (CFC 115)	76-15-3
		Heptachlorofluoropropane (CFC 211)	422-78-6
			135401-87-5
		Hexachlorodifluoropropane (CFC 212)	3182-26-1
		Pentachlorotrifluoropropane (CFC 213)	2354-06-5
			134237-31-3
		Tetrachlorotetrafluoropropane (CFC 214) 1,1,1,3-Tetrachlorotetrafluoropropane	29255-31-0 2268-46-4
		Trichloropentafluoropropane (CFC 215) 1,1,1-Trichloropentafluoropropane 1,2,3-Trichloropentafluoropropane	1599-41-3 4259-43-2 76-17-5
		Dichlorohexafluoropropane (CFC 216)	661-97-2
		Monochloroheptafluoropropane (CFC 217)	422-86-6
		Bromochlorodifluoromethane (Halon 1211)	353-59-3
		Bromotrifluoromethane (Halon 1301)	75-63-8
		Dibromotetrafluoroethane (Halon 2402)	124-73-2
		Carbon tetrachloride (Tetrachloromethane)	56-23-5
		1,1,1, - Trichloroethane (methyl chloroform) and its isomers except 1,1,2-trichloroethane	71-55-6
		Bromomethane (Methyl bromide)	74-83-9
		Bromodifluoromethane and isomers (HBFC's)	1511-62-2
		Dichlorofluoromethane (HCFC 21)	75-43-4
		Chlorodifluoromethane (HCFC 22)	75-45-6
		Chlorofluoromethane (HCFC 31)	593-70-4

Table	Material Category	Substances	CAS Numbers
		Tetrachlorofluoroethane (121) HCFC 1,1,1,2-tetrachloro-2-fluoroethane (HCFC 121a) 1,1,2,2-tetracloro-1-fluoroethane	134237-32-4 354-11-0 354-14-3
		Trichlorodifluoroethane (HCFC 122) 1,2,2-trichloro-1,1-difluoroethane	41834-16-6 354-21-2
		Dichlorotrifluoroethane(HCFC 123) Dichloro-1,1,2-trifluoroethane 2,2-dichloro-1,1,1-trifluroethane 1,2-dichloro-1,1,2-trifluroethane (HCFC-123a) 1,1-dichloro-1,2,2-trifluroethane (HCFC-123b) 2,2-dichloro-1,1,2-trifluroethane (HCFC-123b)	34077-87-7 90454-18-5 306-83-2 354-23-4 812-04-4 812-04-4
		Chlorotetrafluoroethane (HCFC 124) 2-chloro-1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane 1-chloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane (HCFC 124a)	63938-10-3 2837-89-0 354-25-6
		Trichlorofluoroethane (HCFC 131) 1-Fluoro-1,2,2-trichloroethane 1,1,1-trichloro-2-fluoroethane (HCFC131b)	27154-33-2; (134237-34-6) 359-28-4 811-95-0
		Dichlorodifluoroethane (HCFC 132) 1,2-dichloro-1,1-difluoroethane (HCFC 132b) 1,1-dichloro-1,2-difluoroethane (HFCF 132c) 1,1-dichloro-2,2-difluoroethane 1,2-dichloro-1,2-difluoroethane	25915-78-0 1649-08-7 1842-05-3 471-43-2 431-06-1
		Chlorotrifluoroethane (HCFC 133) 1-chloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane 2-chloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane (HCFC-133a)	1330-45-6 1330-45-6 75-88-7
		Dichlorofluoroethane(HCFC 141) 1,1-dichloro-1-fluoroethane (HCFC-141b) 1,2-dichloro-1-fluoroethane	1717-00-6; (25167-88-8) 1717-00-6 430-57-9
		Chlorodifluoroethane (HCFC 142) 1-chloro-1,1-difluoroethane (HCFC142b) 1-chloro-1,2-difluoroethane (HCFC142a)	25497-29-4 75-68-3 25497-29-4
		Hexachlorofluoropropane (HCFC 221)	134237-35-7
		Pentachlorodifluoropropane (HCFC 222)	134237-36-8
		Tetrachlorotrifluropropane (HCFC 223)	134237-37-9
		Trichlorotetrafluoropropane (HCFC 224)	134237-38-0
		Dichloropentafluoropropane, (Ethyne, fluoro-) (HCFC 225)	127564-92-5; (2713-09-9)
		2,2-Dichloro-1,1,1,3,3-pentafluoropropane(HCFC 225aa)	128903-21-9
		2,3-Dichloro-1,1,1,2,3-pentafluoropropane (HCFC 225ba)	422-48-0
		1,2-Dichloro-1,1,2,3,3-pentafluoropropane (HCFC 225bb)	422-44-6
		3,3-Dichloro-1,1,1,2,2-pentafluoropropane (HCFC 225ca)	422-56-0
		1,3-Dichloro-1,1,2,2,3-pentafluoropropane (HCFC 225cb)	507-55-1
		1,1-Dichloro-1,2,2,3,3-pentafluoropropane(HCFC 225cc)	13474-88-9
		1,2-Dichloro-1,1,3,3,3-pentafluoropropane (HCFC 225da)	431-86-7
		1,3-Dichloro-1,1,2,3,3-pentafluoropropane (HCFC 225ea)	136013-79-1
		1,1-Dichloro-1,2,3,3,3-pentafluoropropane(HCFC 225eb)	111512-56-2
		Chlorohexafluoropropane (HCFC 226)	134308-72-8
		Pentachlorofluoropropane (HCFC 231)	134190-48-0
		Tetrachlorodifluoropropane (HCFC 232)	134237-39-1
		Trichlorotrifluoropropane (HCFC 233) 1,1,1-Trichloro-3,3,3-trifluoropropane	134237-40-4 7125-83-9
		Dichlorotetrafluoropropane (HCFC 234)	127564-83-4
		Chloropentafluoropropane (HCFC 235) 1-Chloro-1,1,3,3,3-pentafluoropropane	134237-41-5 460-92-4
		Tetrachlorofluoropropane (HCFC 241)	134190-49-1
		Trichlorodifluoropropane (HCFC 242)	134237-42-6
		Dichlorotrifluoropropane (HCFC 243) 1,1-dichloro-1,2,2-trifluoropropane 2,3-dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoropropane 3,3-Dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoropropane	134237-43-7 7125-99-7 338-75-0 460-69-5
		Chlorotetrafluoropropane (HCFC 244)	134190-50-4

Table	Material Category	Substances	CAS Numbers
		3-chloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoropropane	679-85-6
		Trichlorofluoropropane (HCFC 251)	134190-51-5
		1,1,3-trichloro-1-fluoropropane	818-99-5
		Dichlorodifluoropropane (HCFC 252)	134190-52-6
		Chlorotrifluoropropane (HCFC 253)	134237-44-8
		3-chloro-1,1,1-trifluoropropane (HCFC 253fb)	460-35-5
		Dichlorofluoropropane (HCFC 261)	134237-45-9
		1,1-dichloro-1-fluoropropane	7799-56-6
		Chlorodifluoropropane (HCFC 262)	134190-53-7
		2-chloro-1,3-difluoropropane	102738-79-4
		Chlorofluoropropane (HCFC 271)	134190-54-8
		2-chloro-2-fluoropropane	420-44-0
	Organotin compounds (tributyl tin, triphenyl tin, tributyl tin oxide)	Bis(tri-n-butyltin) oxide	56-35-9
		Triphenyltin N,N'-dimethyldithiocarbamate	1803-12-9
		Triphenyltin fluoride	379-52-2
		Triphenyltin acetate	900-95-8
		Triphenyltin chloride	639-58-7
		Triphenyltin hydroxide	76-87-9
		Triphenyltin fatty acid salts (C=9-11)	47672-31-1
		Triphenyltin chloroacetate	7094-94-2
		Tributyltin methacrylate	2155-70-6
		Bis(tributyltin) fumarate	6454-35-9
		Tributyltin fluoride	1983-10-4
		Bis(tributyltin) 2,3-dibromosuccinate	31732-71-5
		Tributyltin acetate	56-36-0
		Tributyltin laurate	3090-36-6
		Bis(tributyltin) phthalate	4782-29-0
		Copolymer of alkyl acrylate, methyl methacrylate and tributyltin methacrylate(alkyl; C=8)	-
		Tributyltin sulfamate	6517-25-5
		Bis(tributyltin) maleate	14275-57-1
		Tributyltin chloride	1461-22-9
		Mixture of tributyltin cyclopentanecarboxylate and its analogs (Tributyltin naphthenate)	-
		Mixture of tributyltin 1,2,3,4,4a, 4b, 5,6,10,10adecahydro-7-isopropyl-1, 4a-dimethyl-1-phenanthlenecarboxylate and its analogs (Tributyltin rosin salt)	-
		Other tributyl tins & triphenyl tins	-
Table B (Materials listed in appendix 2 of the Convention)	Cadmium/ cadmium compounds	Cadmium	7440-43-9
		Cadmium oxide	1306-19-0
		Cadmium sulfide	1306-23-6
		Cadmium chloride	10108-64-2
		Cadmium sulfate	10124-36-4
		Other cadmium compounds	-
	Chromium VI compounds	Chromium (VI) oxide	1333-82-0
		Barium chromate	10294-40-3
		Calcium chromate	13765-19-0
		Chromium trioxide	1333-82-0
		Lead (II) chromate	7758-97-6
		Sodium chromate	7775-11-3
		Sodium dichromate	10588-01-9
		Strontium chromate	7789-06-2
		Potassium dichromate	7778-50-9
		Potassium chromate	7789-00-6
		Zinc chromate	13530-65-9
		Other hexavalent chromium compounds	-
	Lead/lead compounds	Lead	7439-92-1
		Lead (II) sulfate	7446-14-2
		Lead (II) carbonate	598-63-0

Table	Material Category	Substances	CAS Numbers
		Lead hydrocarbonate	1319-46-6
		Lead acetate	301-04-2
		Lead (II) acetate, trihydrate	6080-56-4
		Lead phosphate	7446-27-7
		Lead selenide	12069-00-0
		Lead (IV) oxide	1309-60-0
		Lead (II,IV) oxide	1314-41-6
		Lead (II) sulfide	1314-87-0
		Lead (II) oxide	1317-36-8
		Lead (II) carbonate basic	1319-46-6
		Lead hydroxidcarbonate	1344-36-1
		Lead (II) phosphate	7446-27-7
		Lead (II) chromate	7758-97-6
		Lead (II) titanate	12060-00-3
		Lead sulfate, sulphuric acid, lead salt	15739-80-7
		Lead sulphate, tribasic	12202-17-4
		Lead stearate	1072-35-1
		Other lead compounds	-
	Mercury/ mercury compounds	Mercury	7439-97-6
		Mercuric chloride	33631-63-9
		Mercury (II) chloride	7487-94-7
		Mercuric sulfate	7783-35-9
		Mercuric nitrate	10045-94-0
		Mercuric (II) oxide	21908-53-2
		Mercuric sulfide	1344-48-5
		Other mercury compounds	-
	Polybrominated biphenyls (PBBs) and polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs)	Bromobiphenyl and its ethers	2052-07-5 (2-Bromobiphenyl)
			2113-57-7 (3-Bromobiphenyl
			92-66-0 (4-Bromobiphenyl)
			101-55-3 (ether)
		Decabromobiphenyl and its ethers	13654-09-6
			1163-19-5 (ether)
		Dibromobiphenyl and its ethers	92-86-4
			2050-47-7 (ether)
		Heptabromobiphenylether	68928-80-3
		Hexabromobiphenyl and its ethers	59080-40-9
			36355-01-8 (hexabromo-1,1'-biphenyl)
			67774-32-7 (Firemaster FF-1)
			36483-60-0 (ether)
		Nonabromobiphenylether	63936-56-1
		Octabromobiphenyl and its ethers	61288-13-9
			32536-52-0 (ether)
		Pentabromobidphenyl ether (note: commercially available PeBDPO is a complex reaction mixture containing a variety of brominated diphenyloxides.	32534-81-9 (CAS number used for commercial grades of PeBDPO)
		Polybrominated biphenyls	59536-65-1
		Tetrabromobiphenyl and its ethers	40088-45-7
			40088-47-9 (ether)
		Tribromobiphenyl ether	49690-94-0
	Polychlorinated naphthalenes	Polychlorinated naphthalenes	70776-03-3
		Other polychlorinated naphthalenes	-
	Radioactive substances	Uranium	-
		Plutonium	-
		Radon	-
		Americium	-
		Thorium	-
		Cesium	7440-46-2
		Strontium	7440-24-6

Table	Material Category	Substances	CAS Numbers
		Other radioactive substances	-
	Certain shortchain chlorinated paraffins (with carbon length of 10-13 atoms)	Chlorinated paraffins (C10-13)	85535-84-8
		Other short chain chlorinated paraffins	-

APPENDIX 9

SPECIFIC TEST METHODS

1 Asbestos

Types to test for: as per resolution MEPC.179(59); Actinolite CAS 77536-66-4 Amosite (Grunerite) CAS 12172-73-5 Anthophyllite CAS 77536-67-5 Chrysotile CAS 12001-29-5 Crocidolite CAS 12001-28-4 Asbestos Tremolite CAS 77536-68-6.

Specific testing techniques: Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM), electron microscope techniques and/or X-Ray Diffraction (XRD) as applicable.

Specific reporting information: The presence/no presence of asbestos, indicate the concentration range, and state the type when necessary.

Notes: .1 The suggested three kinds of testing techniques are most commonly used methods when analysing asbestos and each of them has its limitation. Laboratories should choose the most suitable methods to determine, and in most cases, two or more techniques should be utilized together.

.2 The quantification of asbestos is difficult at this stage, although the XRD technique is applicable. Only a few laboratories conduct the quantification rather than the qualification, especially when a precise number is required. Considering the demand from the operators and ship recycling parties, the precise concentration is not strictly required. Thereby, the concentration range is recommended to report, and the recommended range division according to standard VDI 3866 is as follows:

- Asbestos not detected
- Traces of asbestos detected
- Asbestos content approx. 1% to 15% by mass
- Asbestos content approx. 15% to 40% by mass
- Asbestos content greater than 40% by mass

Results that specified more precisely must be provided with a reasoned statement on the uncertainty.

.3 As to the asbestos types, to distinguish all six different types is time consuming and in some cases not feasible by current techniques; while on the practical side, the treatment of different types of asbestos is the same. Therefore, it is suggested to report the type when necessary.

2 Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)

Note: There are 209 different congeners (forms) of PCB of it is impracticable to test for all. Various organizations have developed lists of PCBs to test for as indicators. In this instance two alternative approaches are recommended. Method 1 identifies the seven congeners used by the International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES). Method 2 identifies 19 congeners and seven types of aroclor (PCB mixtures commonly found in solid shipboard materials containing PCBs). Laboratories should be familiar with the requirements and consequences for each of these lists.

Types to test for: Method 1: ICES7 congeners (28, 52, 101, 118, 138, 153, 180). Method 2: 19 congeners and seven types of aroclor, using the US EPA 8082a test.

Specific testing technique: GC-MS (congener specific) or GC-ECD or GC-ELCD for applicable mixtures such as aroclors. Note: standard samples must be used for each type.

Sample Preparation: It is important to properly prepare PCB samples prior to testing. For solid materials (cables, rubber, paint, etc.), it is especially critical to select the proper extraction procedure in order to release PCBs since they are chemically bound within the product.

Specific reporting information: PCB congener, ppm per congener in sample, and for Method 2, ppm per aroclor in sample should also be reported.

Notes:

.1 Certain field or indicator tests are suitable for detecting PCBs in liquids or surfaces. However, there are currently no such tests that can accurately identify PCBs in solid shipboard materials. It is also noted that many of these tests rely on the identification of free chlorine ions and are thus highly susceptible to chlorine contamination and false readings in a marine environment where all surfaces are highly contaminated with chlorine ions from the sea water and atmosphere.

.2 Several congeners are tested for as "indicator" congeners. They are used because their presence often indicates the likelihood of other congeners in greater quantities (many PCBs are mixes, many mixes use a limited number of PCBs in small quantities, therefore the presence of these small quantities indicates the potential for a mix containing far higher quantities of other PCBs).

.3 Many reports refer to "total PCB", which is often a scaled figure to represent likely total PCBs based on the sample and the common ratios of PCB mixes. Where this is done the exact scaling technique must be stated, and is for information only and does not form part of the specific technique.

3 Ozone depleting substances

Types to test for: as per appendix 8 of these guidelines all the listed CFCs, Halons, HCFCs and other listed substance as required by Montreal Protocol.

Specific testing technique: Gas Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry (GC-MS), coupled Electron Capture Detectors (GC-ECD) and Electrolytic Conductivity Detectors (GC-ELCD).

Specific reporting information: Type and concentration of ODS.

4 Anti-fouling systems containing organotin compounds as a biocide

Types to test for: Anti-fouling compounds and systems regulated under annex I to the International Convention on the Control of Harmful Anti-fouling Systems on Ships, 2001 (AFS Convention), including: tributyl tins (TBT), triphenyl tins (TPT) and tributyl tin oxide (TBTO).

Specific testing technique: As per resolution MEPC.104(49) (*Guidelines for Brief Sampling of Anti-Fouling Systems on Ships*), adopted 18 July 2003, using ICPOES, ICP, AAS, XRF, GC-MS as applicable.
Specific reporting information: Type and concentration of organotin compound.

Note: For "field" or "indicative" testing it may be acceptable to simply identify presence of tin, due to the expected good documentation on anti-fouling systems.

APPENDIX 10

EXAMPLES OF RADIOACTIVE SOURCES

The following list contains examples of radioactive sources that should be included in the Inventory, regardless of the number, the amount of radioactivity or the type of radionuclide.

Examples of consumer products with radioactive materials

Ionization chamber smoke detectors (typical radionuclides ^{241}Am; ^{226}Ra)
Instruments/signs containing gaseous tritium light sources (^{3}H)
Instruments/signs containing radioactive painting (typical radionuclide ^{226}Ra)
High intensity discharge lamps (typical radionuclides ^{85}Kr; ^{232}Th)
Radioactive lighting rods (typical radionuclides ^{241}Am; ^{226}Ra)

Examples of industrial gauges with radioactive materials

Radioactive level gauges
Radioactive dredger gauges[19]
Radioactive conveyor gauges[56]
Radioactive spinning pipe gauges[56]

***

[19] Typical radionuclides: ^{241}Am; $^{241}Am/Be$; ^{252}Cf; ^{244}Cm; ^{60}Co; ^{137}Cs; ^{153}Gd; ^{192}Ir; ^{147}Pm; ^{238}Pu; $^{239}Pu/Be$; ^{226}Ra; ^{75}S; ^{90}Sr (^{90}Y); ^{170}Tm; ^{169}Yb

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION

E

4 ALBERT EMBANKMENT
LONDON SE1 7SR
Telephone: +44 (0)20 7735 7611 Fax: +44 (0)20 7587 3210

MEPC.1/Circ.855
15 July 2015

2014 GUIDELINES ON SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION OF THE ENERGY EFFICIENCY DESIGN INDEX (EEDI), AS AMENDED (RESOLUTION MEPC.254 (67), AS AMENDED BY RESOLUTION MEPC.261 (68))

1 The Marine Environment Protection Committee, at its sixty-eighth session (11 to 15 May 2015), adopted, by resolution MEPC.261(68), amendments to the *2014 Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI)* (resolution MEPC.254(67)). A consolidated text of the Guidelines, as requested by the Committee (MEPC 68/21, paragraph 3.99), is set out in the annex.

2 The Committee also endorsed the use of ISO standard 15016:2015 for ships for which the sea trial is conducted on or after 1 September 2015 and encouraged the application of the standard prior to that date (MEPC 68/21, paragraph 3.100).

3 Member Governments are invited to bring the annexed *2014 Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI)*, as amended, to the attention of Administrations, industry, relevant shipping organizations, shipping companies and other stakeholders concerned.

***

ANNEX

2014 GUIDELINES ON SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION OF THE ENERGY EFFICIENCY DESIGN INDEX (EEDI), AS AMENDED (RESOLUTION MEPC.254 (67), AS AMENDED BY RESOLUTION MEPC.261 (68))

Table of contents

1 GENERAL

2 DEFINITIONS

3 APPLICATION

4 PROCEDURES FOR SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION

- 4.1 General
- 4.2 Preliminary verification of the attained EEDI at the design stage
- 4.3 Final verification of the attained EEDI at sea trial
- 4.4 Verification of the attained EEDI in case of major conversion

Appendix 1 Sample of EEDI Technical File

Appendix 2 Guidelines for validation of electric power tables for EEDI (EPT-EEDI)

Appendix 3 Electric power table form for EEDI (EPT-EEDI Form) and statement of validation

1 GENERAL

The purpose of these guidelines is to assist verifiers of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) of ships in conducting the survey and certification of the EEDI, in accordance with regulations 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 of MARPOL Annex VI, and assist shipowners, shipbuilders, manufacturers and other interested parties in understanding the procedures for the survey and certification of the EEDI.

2 DEFINITIONS[1]

2.1 *Verifier* means an Administration, or organization duly authorized by it, which conducts the survey and certification of the EEDI in accordance with regulations 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 of MARPOL Annex VI and these Guidelines.

2.2 *Ship of the same type* means a ship the hull form (expressed in the lines such as sheer plan and body plan), excluding additional hull features such as fins, and principal particulars of which are identical to that of the base ship.

2.3 *Tank test* means model towing tests, model self-propulsion tests and model propeller open water tests. Numerical calculations may be accepted as equivalent to model propeller open water tests or used to complement the tank tests conducted (e.g. to evaluate the effect of additional hull features such as fins, etc. on ships' performance) with the approval of the verifier.

3 APPLICATION

These guidelines should be applied to new ships for which an application for an initial survey or an additional survey specified in regulation 5 of MARPOL Annex VI has been submitted to a verifier.

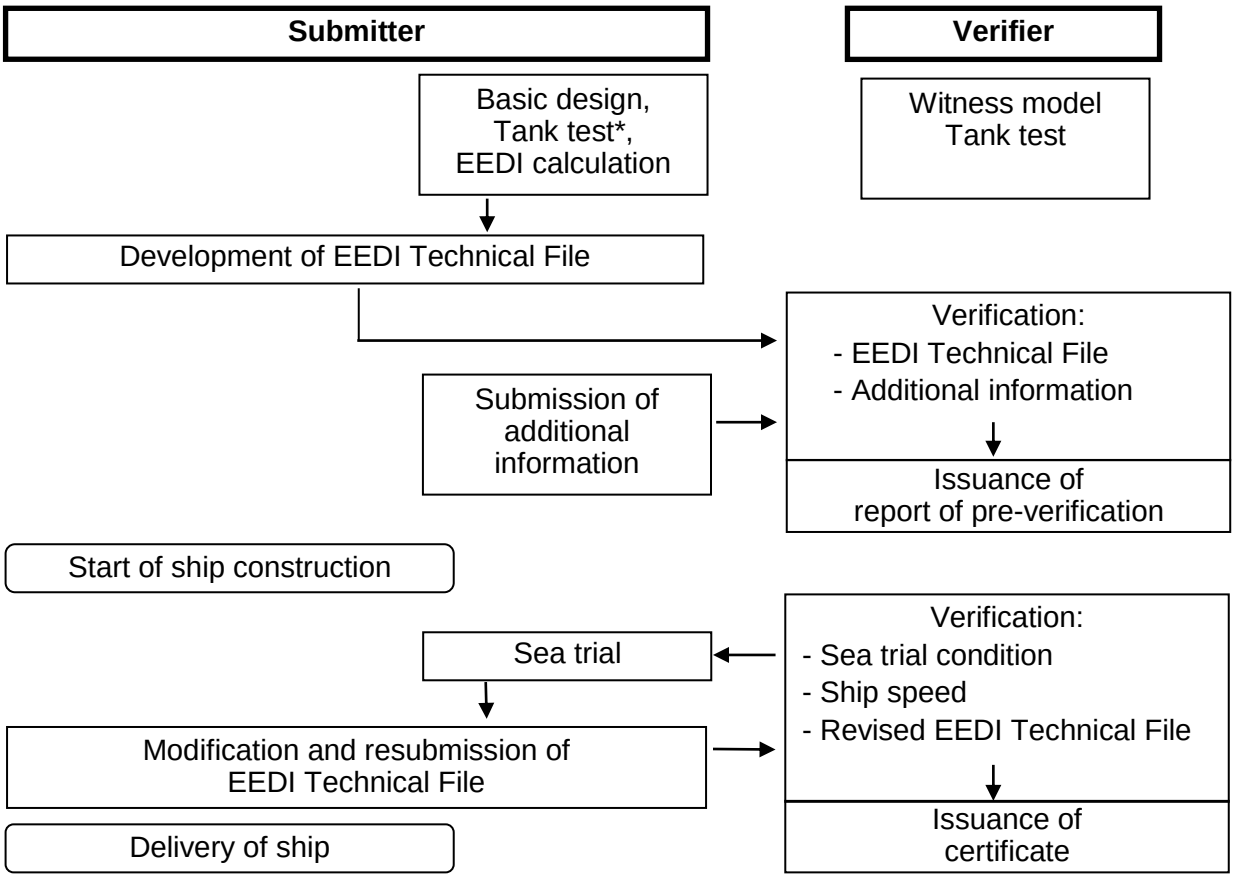
4 PROCEDURES FOR SURVEY AND CERTIFICATION

4.1 General

4.1.1 The attained EEDI should be calculated in accordance with regulation 20 of MARPOL Annex VI and the *2014 Guidelines on the method of calculation of the attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships*, as amended (resolution MEPC.245(66), as amended by resolution MEPC.263(68)) (EEDI Calculation Guidelines). Survey and certification of the EEDI should be conducted in two stages: preliminary verification at the design stage and final verification at the sea trial. The basic flow of the survey and certification process is presented in figure 1.

4.1.2 The information used in the verification process may contain confidential information of submitters which requires Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) protection. In the case where the submitter wants a non-disclosure agreement with the verifier, the additional information should be provided to the verifier upon mutually agreed terms and conditions.

[1] Other terms used in these Guidelines have the same meaning as those defined in the *2014 Guidelines on the method of calculation of the attained EEDI for new ships*, as amended (resolution MEPC.245(66), as amended by resolution MEPC.263(68)).



* To be conducted by a test organization or a submitter.

Figure 1: Basic flow of survey and certification process

4.2 Preliminary verification of the attained EEDI at the design stage

4.2.1 For the preliminary verification at the design stage, an application for an initial survey and an EEDI Technical File containing the necessary information for the verification and other relevant background documents should be submitted to a verifier.

4.2.2 The EEDI Technical File should be written at least in English. The EEDI Technical File should include as a minimum, but not limited to:

.1 deadweight (DWT) or gross tonnage (GT) for passenger and ro-ro passenger ships, the maximum continuous rating (MCR) of the main and auxiliary engines, the ship speed (V_{ref}), as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines, type of fuel, the specific fuel consumption (*SFC*) of the main engine at 75% of MCR power, the *SFC* of the auxiliary engines at 50% MCR power, and the electric power table[2] for certain ship types, as necessary, as defined in the EEDI Calculation Guidelines;

[2] Electric power tables should be validated separately, taking into account the guidelines set out in appendix 2.

.2 power curve(s) (kW – knot) estimated at design stage under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines, and, in the event that the sea trial is carried out in a condition other than the above condition, also a power curve estimated under the sea trial condition;

.3 principal particulars, ship type and the relevant information to classify the ship as such a ship type, classification notations and an overview of the propulsion system and electricity supply system on board;

.4 estimation process and methodology of the power curves at design stage;

.5 description of energy saving equipment;

.6 calculated value of the attained EEDI, including the calculation summary, which should contain, at a minimum, each value of the calculation parameters and the calculation process used to determine the attained EEDI;

.7 calculated values of the attained $EEDI_{weather}$ and f_w value (not equal to 1.0), if those values are calculated, based on the EEDI Calculation Guidelines; and

.8 for LNG carriers:

.1 type and outline of propulsion systems (such as direct drive diesel, diesel electric, steam turbine);

.2 LNG cargo tank capacity in m^3 and BOR as defined in paragraph 2.5.6.3 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines;

.3 shaft power of the propeller shaft after transmission gear at 100% of the rated output of motor (MPP_{Motor}) and $\eta_{(i)}$ for diesel electric;

.4 maximum continuous rated power ($MCR_{SteamTurbine}$) for steam turbine; and

.5 $SFC_{SteamTurbine}$ for steam turbine, as specified in paragraph 2.5.7 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

A sample of an EEDI Technical File is provided in appendix 1.

4.2.3 For ships equipped with dual-fuel engine(s) using LNG and fuel oil, the C_F-factor for gas (LNG) and the specific fuel consumption (*SFC*) of gas fuel should be used by applying the following criteria as a basis for the guidance of the Administration:

.1 final decision on the primary fuel rests with the Administration;

.2 the ratio of calorific value of gas fuel (LNG) to total marine fuels (HFO/MGO), including gas fuel (LNG) at design conditions should be equal to or larger than 50% in accordance with the formula below. However, the Administration can accept a lower value of the percentage taking into account the intended voyages:

$$\frac{V_{gas} \times \rho_{gas} \times LCV_{gas} \times K_{gas}}{\left(\sum_{i=1}^{nLiquid} V_{liquid(i)} \times \rho_{liquid(i)} \times LCV_{liquid(i)} \times K_{liquid(i)} \right) + V_{gas} \times \rho_{gas} \times LCV_{gas} \times K_{gas}} \geq 50\%$$

whereby:

V_{gas} is the total net tank volume of gas fuel on board in m^3;

V_{liquid} is the total net tank volume of every liquid fuel on board in m^3;

ρ_{gas} is the density of gas fuel in kg/m^3;

ρ_{liquid} is the density of every liquid fuel in kg/m^3;

LCV_{gas} is the low calorific value of gas fuel in kJ/kg;

LCV_{liquid} is the low calorific value of liquid fuel in kJ/kg;

K_{gas} is the filling rate for gas fuel tanks;

K_{liquid} is the filling rate for liquid fuel tanks.

Normal density, Low Calorific Value and filling rate for tanks of different kinds of fuel are listed below.

Type of fuel	Density (kg/m^3)	Low Calorific Value (kJ/kg)	Filling rate for tanks
Diesel/Gas Oil	900	42700	0.98
Heavy Fuel Oil	991	40200	0.98
Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG)	450	48000	0.95*

* Subject to verification of tank filling limit.

.3 in case the ship is not fully equipped with dual-fuel engines, the CF-factor for gas (LNG) should apply only for those installed engines that are of dual-fuel type and sufficient gas fuel supply should be available for such engines; and

.4 LNG fuelling solutions with exchangeable (specialized) LNG tank-containers should also fall under the terms of LNG as primary fuel.

4.2.4 The *SFC* of the main and auxiliary engines should be quoted from the approved NO_x Technical File and should be corrected to the value corresponding to the ISO standard reference conditions using the standard lower calorific value of the fuel oil (42,700 kJ/kg), referring to ISO 15550:2002 and ISO 3046-1:2002. For the confirmation of the *SFC*, a copy of the approved NO_x Technical File and documented summary of the correction calculations should be submitted to the verifier. In cases where the NO_x Technical File has not been

approved at the time of the application for initial survey, the test reports provided by manufacturers should be used. In this case, at the time of the sea trial verification, a copy of the approved NO_x Technical File and documented summary of the correction calculations should be submitted to the verifier. In the case that gas fuel is determined as primary fuel in accordance with paragraph 4.2.3 and that installed engine(s) have no approved NO_x Technical File tested in gas mode, the *SFC* of gas mode should be submitted by the manufacturer and confirmed by the verifier.

> **Note:** *SFC* in the NO_x Technical File are the values of a parent engine, and the use of such value of *SFC* for the EEDI calculation for member engines may have the following technical issues for further consideration:
>
> .1 the definition of "member engines" given in the NO_x Technical File is broad and specification of engines belonging to the same group/family may vary; and
>
> .2 the rate of NO_x emission of the parent engine is the highest in the group/family – i.e. CO_2 emission, which is in the trade-off relationship with NO_x emission, can be lower than the other engines in the group/family.

4.2.5 For ships to which regulation 21 of MARPOL Annex VI applies, the power curves used for the preliminary verification at the design stage should be based on reliable results of tank tests. A tank test for an individual ship may be omitted based on technical justifications such as availability of the results of tank tests for ships of the same type. In addition, the omission of tank tests is acceptable for a ship for which sea trials will be carried out under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines, upon agreement of the shipowner and shipbuilder and with the approval of the verifier. To ensure the quality of tank tests, the ITTC quality system should be taken into account. Model tank tests should be witnessed by the verifier.

> **Note:** It would be desirable in the future that an organization conducting a tank test be authorized.

4.2.6 The verifier may request further information from the submitter, in addition to that contained in the EEDI Technical File, as necessary, to examine the calculation process of the attained EEDI. For the estimation of the ship speed at the design stage much depends on each shipbuilder's experience, and it may not be practicable for any person/organization other than the shipbuilder to fully examine the technical aspects of experience-based parameters, such as the roughness coefficient and wake scaling coefficient. Therefore, the preliminary verification should focus on the calculation process of the attained EEDI to ensure that it is technically sound and reasonable and follows regulation 20 of MARPOL Annex VI and the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

> **Note 1:** A possible way forward for more robust verification is to establish a standard methodology of deriving the ship speed from the outcome of tank tests, by setting standard values for experience-based correction factors such as roughness coefficient and wake scaling coefficient. In this way, ship-by-ship performance comparisons could be made more objectively by excluding the possibility of arbitrary setting of experience-based parameters. If such standardization is sought, this would have an implication on how the ship speed adjustment based on sea trial results should be conducted, in accordance with paragraph 4.3.8 of these Guidelines.
>
> **Note 2:** A joint industry standard to support the method and role of the verifier is expected to be developed.

4.2.7 Additional information that the verifier may request the submitter to provide includes, but is not limited to:

.1 descriptions of a tank test facility; this should include the name of the facility, the particulars of tanks and towing equipment, and the records of calibration of each monitoring equipment;

.2 lines of a model ship and an actual ship for the verification of the appropriateness of the tank test; the lines (sheer plan, body plan and half-breadth plan) should be detailed enough to demonstrate the similarity between the model ship and the actual ship;

.3 lightweight of the ship and displacement table for the verification of the deadweight;

.4 detailed report on the method and results of the tank test; this should include at least the tank test results at sea trial condition and under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines;

.5 detailed calculation process of the ship speed, which should include the basis for the estimation of experience-based parameters such as roughness coefficient and wake scaling coefficient;

.6 reasons for exempting a tank test, if applicable; this should include lines and tank test results of ships of the same type, and the comparison of the principal particulars of such ships and the ship in question. Appropriate technical justification should be provided, explaining why the tank test is unnecessary; and

.7 for LNG carriers, detailed calculation process of P_{AE} and $SFC_{SteamTurbine}$.

4.2.8 The verifier should issue the report on the Preliminary Verification of the EEDI after it has verified the attained EEDI at the design stage, in accordance with paragraphs 4.1 and 4.2 of these Guidelines.

4.3 Final verification of the attained EEDI at sea trial

4.3.1 Sea trial conditions should be set as the conditions specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines, if possible.

4.3.2 Prior to the sea trial, the following documents should be submitted to the verifier: a description of the test procedure to be used for the speed trial, the final displacement table and the measured lightweight, or a copy of the survey report of deadweight, as well as a copy of the NO_x Technical File, as necessary. The test procedure should include, as a minimum, descriptions of all necessary items to be measured and corresponding measurement methods to be used for developing power curves under the sea trial condition.

4.3.3 The verifier should attend the sea trial and confirm:

.1 propulsion and power supply system, particulars of the engines or steam turbines, and other relevant items described in the EEDI Technical File;

.2 draught and trim;

.3 sea conditions;

.4 ship speed; and

.5 shaft power and RPM.

4.3.4 Draught and trim should be confirmed by the draught measurements taken prior to the sea trial. The draught and trim should be as close as practical to those at the assumed conditions used for estimating the power curves.

4.3.5 Sea conditions should be measured in accordance with ITTC Recommended Procedure 7.5-04-01-01.1 Speed and Power Trials Part 1; 2014 or ISO 15016:2015.

4.3.6 Ship speed should be measured in accordance with ITTC Recommended Procedure 7.5-04-01-01.1 Speed and Power Trials Part 1; 2014 or ISO 15016:2015, and at more than two points of which range includes the power of the main engine as specified in paragraph 2.5 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

4.3.7 The main engine output, shaft power of propeller shaft (for LNG carriers having diesel electric propulsion system) or steam turbine output (for LNG carrier having steam turbine propulsion system) should be measured by shaft power meter or a method which the engine manufacturer recommends and the verifier approves. Other methods may be acceptable upon agreement of the shipowner and shipbuilder and with the approval of the verifier.

4.3.8 The submitter should develop power curves based on the measured ship speed and the measured output of the main engine at sea trial. For the development of the power curves, the submitter should calibrate the measured ship speed, if necessary, by taking into account the effects of wind, current, waves, shallow water, displacement, water temperature and water density in accordance with ITTC Recommended Procedure 7.5-04-01-01.2 Speed and Power Trials Part 2; 2014 or ISO 15016:2015. Upon agreement with the shipowner, the submitter should submit a report on the speed trials including details of the power curve development to the verifier for verification.

4.3.9 The submitter should compare the power curves obtained as a result of the sea trial and the estimated power curves at the design stage. In case differences are observed, the attained EEDI should be recalculated, as necessary, in accordance with the following:

.1 for ships for which sea trial is conducted under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines: the attained EEDI should be recalculated using the measured ship speed at sea trial at the power of the main engine as specified in paragraph 2.5 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines; and

.2 for ships for which sea trial cannot be conducted under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines: if the measured ship speed at the power of the main engine as specified in paragraph 2.5 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines at the sea trial conditions is different from the expected ship speed on the power curve at the corresponding condition, the shipbuilder should recalculate the attained EEDI by adjusting ship speed under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines by an appropriate correction method that is agreed by the verifier.

.3 An example of the scheme of conversion from trial condition to EEDI condition at EEDI power is given as follows:

V_{ref} is obtained from the results of the sea trials at trial condition using the speed-power curves predicted by the tank tests. The tank tests shall be carried out at both draughts: trial condition corresponding to that of the S/P trials and EEDI condition. For trial conditions the power ratio α_P between model test prediction and sea trial result is calculated for constant ship speed. Ship speed from model test prediction for EEDI condition at EEDI power multiplied with α_P is V_{ref}.

$$\alpha_P = \frac{P_{Trial,P}}{P_{Trial,S}}$$

where:

$P_{Trial,P}$: power at trial condition predicted by the tank tests

$P_{Trial,S}$: power at trial condition obtained by the S/P trials

α_P: power ratio

.4 Figure 2 shows an example of the scheme of conversion to derive the resulting ship speed at EEDI condition (V_{ref}) at EEDI power.

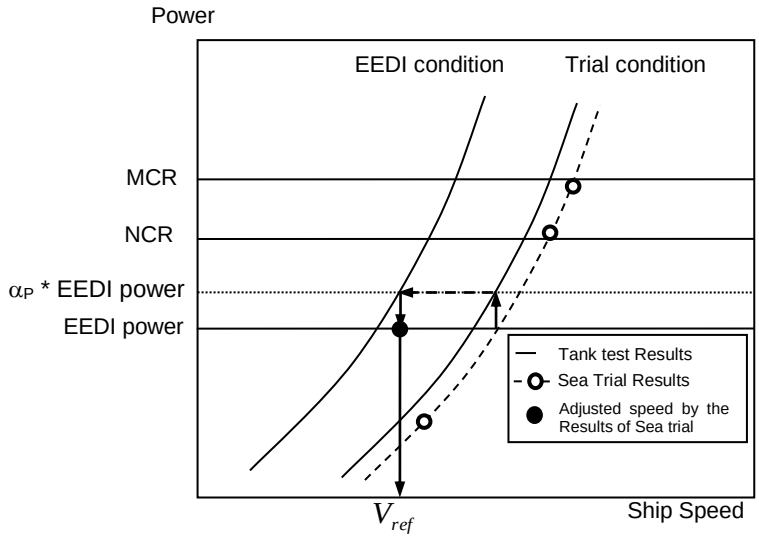


Figure 2: An example of scheme of conversion from trial condition to EEDI condition at EEDI power

Note: Further consideration would be necessary for speed adjustment methodology in paragraphs 4.3.9.2 to 4.3.9.4 of these Guidelines. One of the concerns relates to a possible situation where the power curve for sea trial condition is estimated in an excessively conservative manner (i.e. power curve is shifted in a leftward direction) with the intention to get an upward adjustment of the ship speed by making the measured ship speed at sea trial easily exceed the lower-estimated speed for sea trial condition at design stage.

4.3.10 In cases where the finally determined deadweight/gross tonnage differs from the designed deadweight/gross tonnage used in the EEDI calculation during the preliminary verification, the submitter should recalculate the attained EEDI using the finally determined deadweight/gross tonnage. The finally determined gross tonnage should be confirmed in the Tonnage Certificate of the ship.

4.3.11 The electrical efficiency $\eta_{(i)}$ should be taken as 91.3% for the purpose of calculating the attained EEDI. Alternatively, if a value of more than 91.3% is to be applied, $\eta_{(i)}$ should be obtained by measurement and verified by a method approved by the verifier.

4.3.12 In case where the attained EEDI is calculated at the preliminary verification by using *SFC* based on the manufacturer's test report, due to the non-availability at that time of the approved NO_x Technical File, the EEDI should be recalculated by using *SFC* in the approved NO_x Technical File. Also, for steam turbines, the EEDI should be recalculated by using *SFC* confirmed by the Administration, or an organization recognized by the Administration, at the sea trial.

4.3.13 The EEDI Technical File should be revised, as necessary, by taking into account the results of sea trials. Such revision should include, as applicable, the adjusted power curve based on the results of sea trials (namely, modified ship speed under the condition as specified in paragraph 2.2 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines), the finally determined deadweight/gross tonnage, η for LNG carriers having diesel electric propulsion system and *SFC* described in the approved NO_x Technical File, and the recalculated attained EEDI based on these modifications.

4.3.14 The EEDI Technical File, if revised, should be submitted to the verifier for confirmation that the (revised) attained EEDI is calculated in accordance with regulation 20 of MARPOL Annex VI and the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

4.4 Verification of the attained EEDI in case of major conversion

4.4.1 In cases of a major conversion of a ship, the shipowner should submit to a verifier an application for an additional survey with the EEDI Technical File duly revised, based on the conversion made and other relevant background documents.

4.4.2 The background documents should include as a minimum, but are not limited to:

.1 details of the conversion;

.2 EEDI parameters changed after the conversion and the technical justifications for each respective parameter;

.3 reasons for other changes made in the EEDI Technical File, if any; and

.4 calculated value of the attained EEDI with the calculation summary, which should contain, as a minimum, each value of the calculation parameters and the calculation process used to determine the attained EEDI after the conversion.

4.4.3 The verifier should review the revised EEDI Technical File and other documents submitted and verify the calculation process of the attained EEDI to ensure that it is technically sound and reasonable and follows regulation 20 of MARPOL Annex VI and the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

4.4.4 For verification of the attained EEDI after a conversion, speed trials of the ship are required, as necessary.

APPENDIX 1

SAMPLE OF EEDI TECHNICAL FILE

1 Data

1.1 General information

Shipbuilder	JAPAN Shipbuilding Company
Hull no.	12345
IMO no.	94111XX
Ship type	Bulk carrier

1.2 Principal particulars

Length overall	250.0 m
Length between perpendiculars	240.0 m
Breadth, moulded	40.0 m
Depth, moulded	20.0 m
Summer load line draught, moulded	14.0 m
Deadweight at summer load line draught	150,000 tons

1.3 Main engine

Manufacturer	JAPAN Heavy Industries Ltd.
Type	6J70A
Maximum continuous rating (MCR)	15,000 kW x 80 rpm
SFC at 75% MCR	165.0 g/kWh
Number of sets	1
Fuel type	Diesel Oil

1.4 Auxiliary engine

Manufacturer	JAPAN Diesel Ltd.
Type	5J-200
Maximum continuous rating (MCR)	600 kW x 900 rpm
SFC at 50% MCR	220.0 g/kWh
Number of sets	3
Fuel type	Diesel Oil

1.5 Ship speed

Ship speed in deep water at summer load line draught at 75% of MCR	14.25 knots

2 Power curves

The power curves estimated at the design stage and modified after the speed trials are shown in figure 2.1.

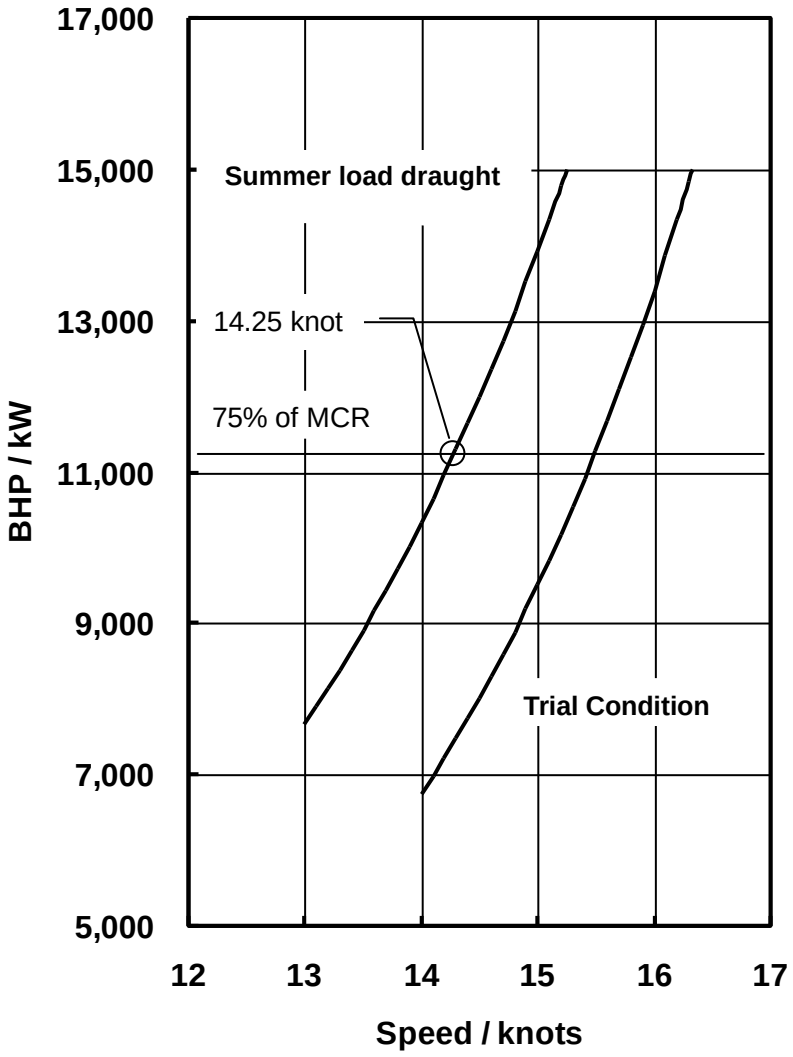


Figure 2.1: Power curves

3 Overview of propulsion system and electric power supply system

3.1 Propulsion system

3.1.1 Main engine
Refer to paragraph 1.3 of this appendix.

3.1.2 Propeller

Type	Fixed pitch propeller
Diameter	7.0 m
Number of blades	4
Number of sets	1

3.2 Electric power supply system

3.2.1 Auxiliary engines
Refer to paragraph 1.4 of this appendix.

3.2.2 Main generators

Manufacturer	JAPAN Electric
Rated output	560 kW (700 kVA) x 900 rpm
Voltage	AC 450 V
Number of sets	3

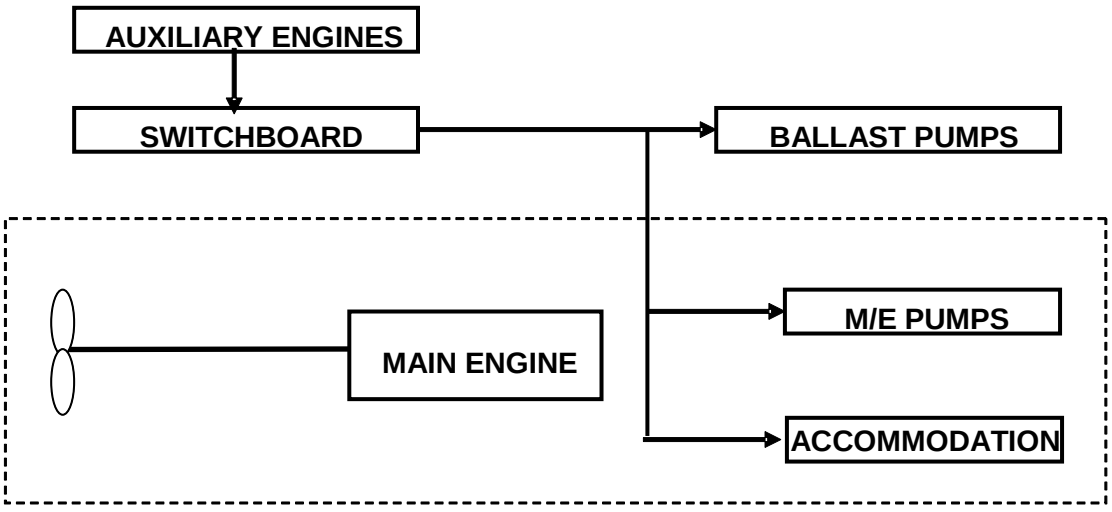


Figure 3.1: Schematic figure of propulsion and electric power supply system

4 Estimation process of power curves at design stage

Power curves are estimated based on model test results. The flow of the estimation process is shown below.

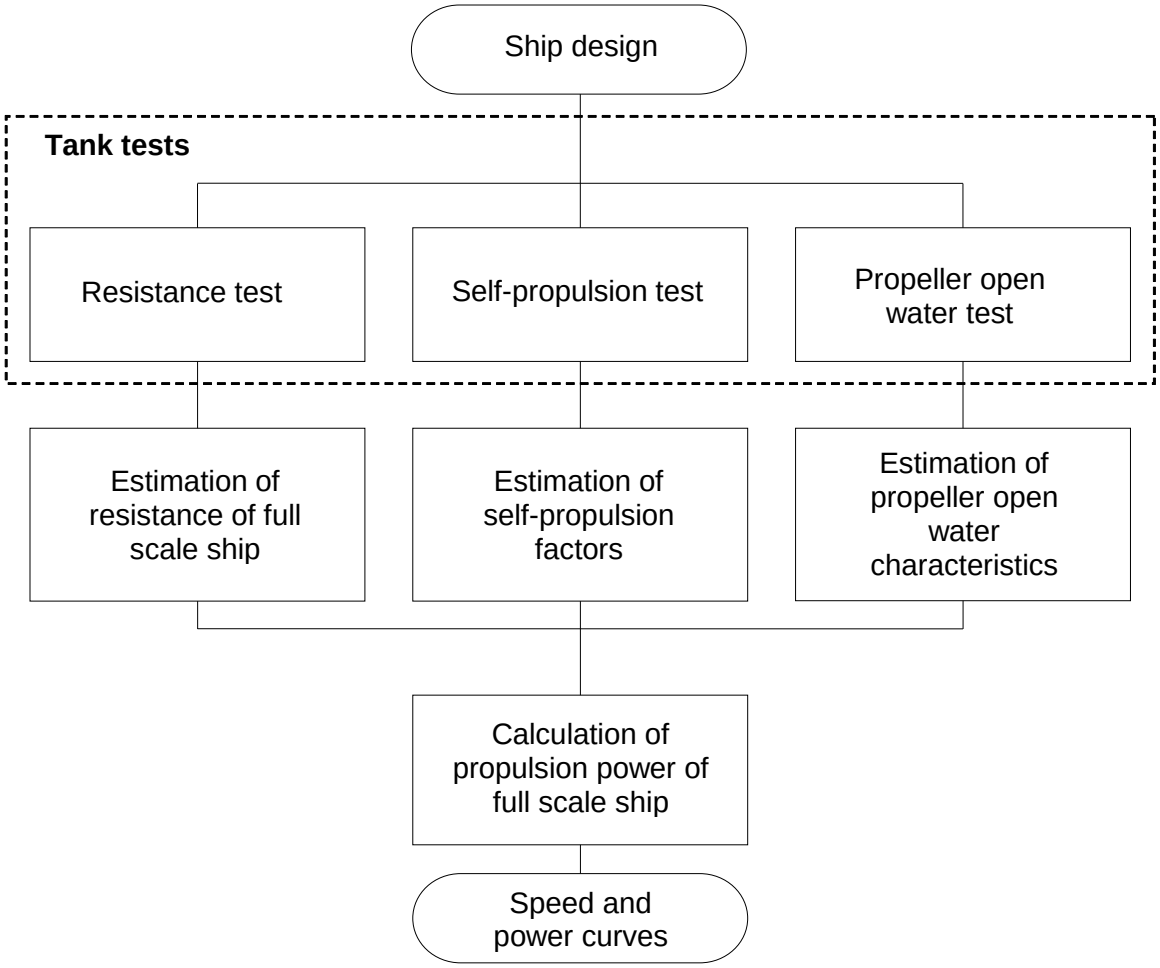


Figure 4.1: Flow-chart of process for estimating power curves

5 Description of energy saving equipment

5.1 Energy saving equipment the effects of which are expressed as $P_{AEeff(i)}$ and/or $P_{eff(i)}$ in the EEDI calculation formula

N/A

5.2 Other energy saving equipment

(Example)

5.2.1 Rudder fins

5.2.2 Propeller boss cap fins

(Specifications, schematic figures and/or photos, etc., for each piece of equipment or device should be indicated. Alternatively, attachment of a commercial catalogue may be acceptable.)

6 Calculated value of attained EEDI

6.1 Basic data

Type of ship	Capacity DWT	Speed V_{ref} (knots)
Bulk Carrier	150,000	14.25

6.2 Main engine

MCR_{ME} (kW)	Shaft gen.	P_{ME} (kW)	Type of fuel	C_{FME}	SFC_{ME} (g/kWh)
15,000	N/A	11,250	Diesel Oil	3.206	165.0

6.3 Auxiliary engines

P_{AE} (kW)	Type of fuel	C_{FAE}	SFC_{AE} (g/kWh)
625	Diesel Oil	3.206	220.0

6.4 Ice class

N/A

6.5 Innovative electrical energy efficient technology

N/A

6.6 Innovative mechanical energy efficient technology

N/A

6.7 Cubic capacity correction factor

N/A

6.8 Calculated value of attained EEDI

$$EEDI = \frac{\left(\prod_{j=1}^{M} f_j\right)\left(\sum_{i=1}^{nME} P_{ME(i)} \cdot C_{FME(i)} \cdot SFC_{ME(i)}\right) + \left(P_{AE} \cdot C_{FAE} \cdot SFC_{AE}\right)}{f_i \cdot f_c \cdot Capacity \cdot f_w \cdot V_{ref}}$$

$$+ \frac{\left\{\left(\prod_{j=1}^{M} f_j \cdot \sum_{i=1}^{nPTI} P_{PTI(i)} - \sum_{i=1}^{neff} f_{eff(i)} \cdot P_{AEeff(i)}\right) C_{FAE} \cdot SFC_{AE}\right\} - \left(\sum_{i=1}^{neff} f_{eff(i)} \cdot P_{eff(i)} \cdot C_{FME} \cdot SFC_{ME}\right)}{f_i \cdot f_c \cdot Capacity \cdot f_w \cdot V_{ref}}$$

$$= \frac{1 \times (11250 \times 3.206 \times 165.0) + (625 \times 3.206 \times 220.0) + 0 - 0}{1 \cdot 1 \cdot 150000 \cdot 1 \cdot 14.25}$$

$$= 2.99 \quad (\mathrm{g - CO_2/ton \cdot mile})$$

attained EEDI: 2.99 g-CO_2/ton mile

7 Calculated value of attained $EEDI_{weather}$

7.1 Representative sea conditions

	Mean wind speed	Mean wind direction	Significant wave height	Mean wave period	Mean wave direction
BF6	12.6 (m/s)	0 (deg.)*	3.0 (m)	6.7 (s)	0 (deg.)*

* Heading direction of wind/wave in relation to the ship's heading, i.e. 0 (deg.) means the ship is heading directly into the wind.

7.2 Calculated weather factor, f_w

f_w	0.900

7.3 Calculated value of attained $EEDI_{weather}$

attained $EEDI_{weather}$: 3.32 g-CO_2/ton mile

APPENDIX 2

GUIDELINES FOR VALIDATION OF ELECTRIC POWER TABLES FOR EEDI (EPT-EEDI)

1 INTRODUCTION

The purpose of these Guidelines is to assist recognized organizations in the validation of Electric Power Tables (EPT) for the calculation of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for ships. As such, these Guidelines support the implementation of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines and the *Guidelines on survey and certification of the Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI)*. These Guidelines will also assist shipowners, shipbuilders, ship designers and manufacturers in relation to aspects of the development of more energy efficient ships and also in understanding the procedures for the EPT-EEDI validation.

2 OBJECTIVES

These Guidelines provide a framework for the uniform application of the EPT-EEDI validation process for ships for which required auxiliary engine power is calculated under paragraph 2.5.6.4 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

3 DEFINITIONS

3.1 *Applicant* means an organization, primarily a shipbuilder or a ship designer, which requests the EPT-EEDI validation in accordance with these Guidelines.

3.2 *Validator* means a recognized organization which conducts the EPT-EEDI validation in accordance with these Guidelines.

3.3 *Validation* for the purpose of these Guidelines means review of submitted documents and survey during construction and sea trials.

3.4 *Standard EPT-EEDI-Form* refers to the layout given in appendix 3, containing the EPT-EEDI results that will be the subject of validation. Other supporting documents submitted for this purpose will be used as reference only and will not be subject to validation.

3.5 P_{AE} herein is defined as per the definition in paragraph 2.5.6 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

3.6 *Ship service and engine-room loads* refer to all the load groups which are needed for the hull, deck, navigation and safety services, propulsion and auxiliary engine services, engine-room ventilation and auxiliaries and ship's general services.

3.7 *Diversity factor* is the ratio of the "total installed load power" and the "actual load power" for continuous loads and intermittent loads. This factor is equivalent to the product of service factors for load, duty and time.

4 APPLICATION

4.1 These Guidelines are applicable to ships as stipulated in paragraph 2.5.6.4 of the EEDI Calculation Guidelines.

4.2 These Guidelines should be applied to new ships for which an application for an EPT-EEDI validation has been submitted to a validator.

4.3 The steps of the validation process include:

.1 review of documents during the design stage:

.1 check if all relevant loads are listed in the EPT;

.2 check if reasonable service factors are used; and

.3 check the correctness of the P_{AE} calculation based on the data given in the EPT;

.2 survey of installed systems and components during construction stage:

.1 check if a randomly selected set of installed systems and components are correctly listed with their characteristics in the EPT;

.3 survey of sea trials:

.1 check if selected units/loads specified in EPT are observed.

5 SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS

5.1 The applicant should provide as a minimum the ship electric balance load analysis.

5.2 Such information may contain shipbuilders' confidential information. Therefore, after the validation, the validator should return all or part of such information to the applicant at the applicant's request.

5.3 A special EEDI condition during sea trials may be needed and defined for each ship and included in the sea trial schedule. For this condition, a special column should be inserted into the EPT.

6 PROCEDURES FOR VALIDATION

6.1 General

P_{AE} should be calculated in accordance with the EPT-EEDI Calculation Guidelines. EPT-EEDI validation should be conducted in two stages: preliminary validation at the design stage and final validation during sea trials. The validation process is presented in figure 6.1.

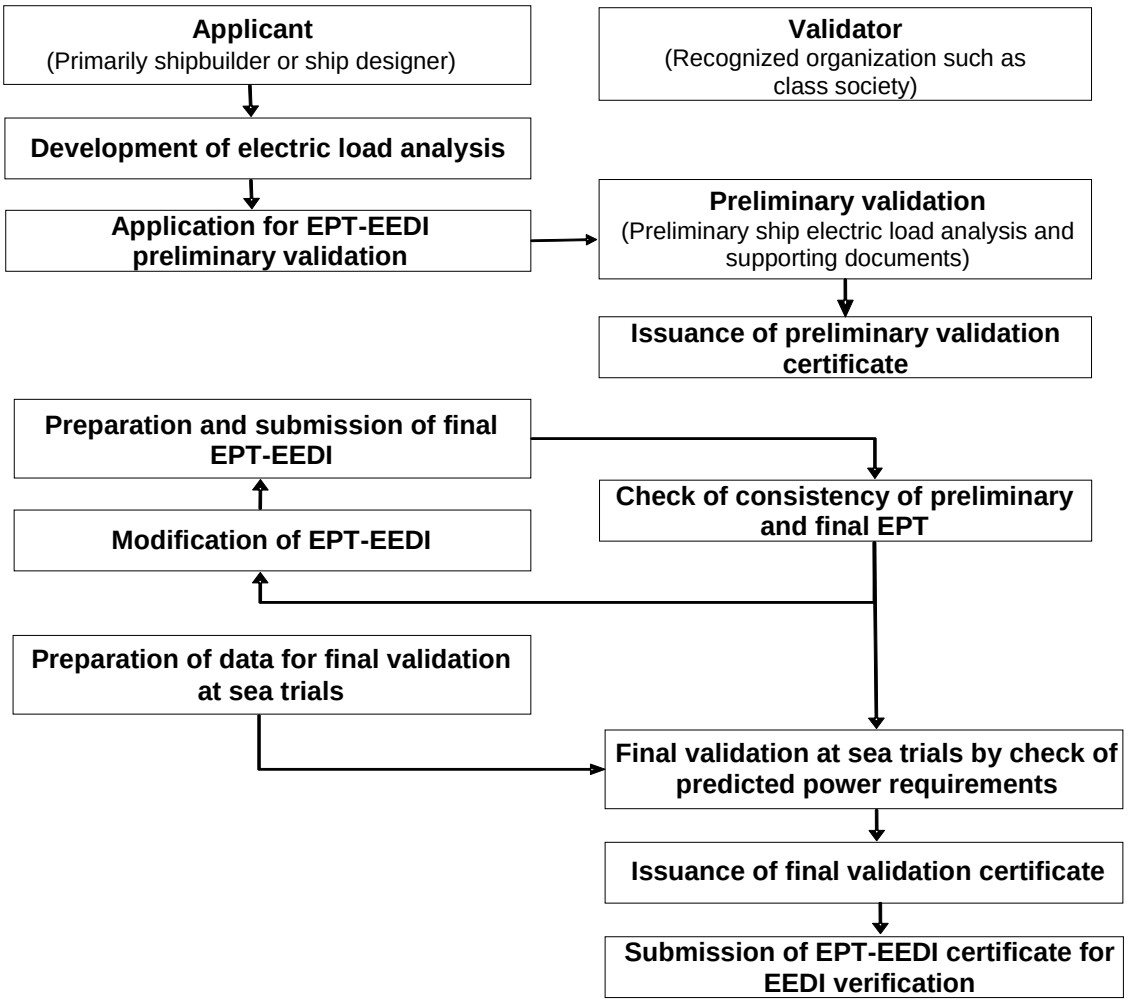


Figure 6.1: Basic flow of EPT-EEDI validation process

6.2 Preliminary validation at the design stage

6.2.1 For the preliminary validation at the design stage, the applicant should submit to a validator an application for the validation of EPT-EEDI, inclusive of the EPT-EEDI Form, and all the relevant and necessary information for the validation as supporting documents.

6.2.2 The applicant should supply as a minimum the supporting data and information, as specified in appendix A (to be developed).

6.2.3 The validator may request from the applicant additional information to that contained in these Guidelines, as necessary, to enable the validator to examine the calculation process of the EPT-EEDI. The estimation of the ship EPT-EEDI at the design stage depends on each applicant's experience, and it may not be practicable to fully examine the technical aspects and details of each machinery component. Therefore, the preliminary validation should focus on the calculation process of the EPT-EEDI that should follow best marine practices.

> **Note:** A possible way forward for more robust validation is to establish a standard methodology of deriving the ship EPT by setting standard formats as agreed and used by industry.

6.3 Final validation

6.3.1 The final validation process should as a minimum include a check of the ship electric load analysis to ensure that all electric consumers are listed. Their specific data and the calculations in the power table itself are correct and are supported by sea trial results. If necessary, additional information has to be requested.

6.3.2 For the final validation, the applicant should revise the EPT-EEDI Form and supporting documents as necessary, by taking into account the characteristics of the machinery and other electrical loads actually installed on board the ship. The EEDI condition at sea trials should be defined and the expected power requirements in these conditions documented in the EPT. Any changes within the EPT from design stage to construction stage should be highlighted by the shipyard.

6.3.3 The preparation for the final validation includes a desk top check comprising:

.1 consistency of preliminary and final EPT;

.2 changes of service factors (compared to the preliminary validation);

.3 all electric consumers are listed;

.4 their specific data and the calculations in the power table itself are correct; and

.5 in case of doubt, component specification data is checked in addition.

6.3.4 A survey prior to sea trials is performed to ensure that machinery characteristics and data as well as other electric loads comply with those recorded in the supporting documents. This survey does not cover the complete installation but selects randomly a number of samples.

6.3.5 For the purpose of sea trial validation, the surveyor will check the data of selected systems and/or components given in the special column added to the EPT for this purpose or the predicted overall value of electric load by means of practicable measurements with the installed measurement devices.

7 ISSUANCE OF THE EPT-EEDI STATEMENT OF VALIDATION

7.1 The validator should stamp the EPT-EEDI Form as "Noted" having validated the EPT-EEDI in the preliminary validation stage, in accordance with these Guidelines.

7.2 The validator should stamp the EPT-EEDI Form as "Endorsed" having validated the final EPT-EEDI in the final validation stage in accordance with these Guidelines.

APPENDIX 3

ELECTRIC POWER TABLE FORM FOR ENERGY EFFICIENCY DESIGN INDEX (EPT-EEDI FORM) AND STATEMENT OF VALIDATION

Ship ID:
IMO no.: _____
Ship's name: _____
Shipyard: _____
Hull no.: _____

Applicant:

Name: _____
Address: _____
_____

Validation stage:

☐ Preliminary validation

☐ Final validation

Summary results of EPT-EEDI

Load group	Seagoing condition EEDI Calculation guidelines		Remarks
	Continuous load (kW)	Intermittent load (kW)	
Ship service and engine-room loads			
Accommodation and cargo loads			
Total installed load			
Diversity factor			
Normal seagoing load			
Weighted average efficiency of generators			
P_{AE}			

Supporting documents

Title	ID or remarks

Validator details:
Organization: _____
Address: _____
_____

This is to certify that the above-mentioned electrical loads and supporting documents have been reviewed in accordance with EPT-EEDI Validation Guidelines and the review shows a reasonable confidence for use of the above P_{AE} in EEDI calculations.

Date of review: _____ Statement of validation no. _____

This statement is valid on condition that the electric power characteristics of the ship do not change.

Signature of Validator

_____
Printed name:

_____

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION

E

4 ALBERT EMBANKMENT
LONDON SE1 7SR
Telephone: +44 (0)20 7735 7611 Fax: +44 (0)20 7587 3210

MEPC.1/Circ.850/Rev.1
15 July 2015

2013 INTERIM GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING MINIMUM PROPULSION POWER TO MAINTAIN THE MANOEUVRABILITY OF SHIPS IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS, AS AMENDED (RESOLUTION MEPC.232(65), AS AMENDED BY RESOLUTIONS MEPC.255(67) AND MEPC.262(68))

1 The Marine Environment Protection Committee, at its sixty-eighth session (11 to 15 May 2015), adopted, by resolution MEPC.262(68), amendments to the *2013 Interim guidelines for determining minimum propulsion power to maintain the manoeuvrability of ships in adverse conditions* (resolution MEPC.232(65), as amended by MEPC.255(67)) (MEPC 68/21, paragraph 3.101).

2 The Committee agreed to a phase-in period of six months for the application of the amendments (MEPC 68/21, paragraph 3.101).

3 A consolidated text of the guidelines, as requested by the Committee (MEPC 68/21, paragraph 3.101), is set out in the annex.

4 Member Governments are invited to bring the annexed *2013 Interim guidelines for determining minimum propulsion power to maintain the manoeuvrability of ships in adverse conditions*, as amended, to the attention of Administrations, industry, relevant shipping organizations, shipping companies and other stakeholders concerned.

***

ANNEX

2013 INTERIM GUIDELINES FOR DETERMINING MINIMUM PROPULSION POWER TO MAINTAIN THE MANOEUVRABILITY OF SHIPS IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS, AS AMENDED (RESOLUTION MEPC.232(65), AS AMENDED BY RESOLUTIONS MEPC.255(67) AND MEPC.262(68))

0 Purpose

The purpose of these interim guidelines is to assist Administrations and recognized organizations in verifying that ships complying with EEDI requirements set out in regulations on energy efficiency for ships have sufficient installed propulsion power to maintain the manoeuvrability in adverse conditions, as specified in regulation 21.5 of chapter 4 of MARPOL Annex VI.

1 Definition

1.1 "Adverse conditions" mean sea conditions with the following parameters:

Significant wave height h_s, m	Peak wave period T_P, s	Mean wind speed V_w, m/s
5.5	7.0 to 15.0	19.0

JONSWAP sea spectrum with the peak parameter of 3.3 is to be considered for coastal waters.

1.2 The following adverse condition should be applied to ships defined by the following threshold values of ship size.

Ship length, m	Significant wave height h_s, m	Peak wave period T_P, s	Mean wind speed V_w, m/s
Less than 200	4.0	7.0 to 15.0	15.7
$200 \leq L_{pp} \leq 250$	Parameters linearly interpolated depending on ship's length		
More than L_{pp} = 250	Refer to paragraph 1.1		

2 Applicability*

2.1 These guidelines should be applied in the case of all new ships of types as listed in table 1 of the appendix required to comply with regulations on energy efficiency for ships according to regulation 21 of MARPOL Annex VI.

2.2 Notwithstanding the above, these guidelines should not be applied to ships with non-conventional propulsion systems, such as pod propulsion.

2.3 These guidelines are intended for ships in unrestricted navigation; for other cases, the Administration should determine appropriate guidelines, taking the operational area and relevant restrictions into account.

* These interim guidelines are applied to ships required to comply with regulations on energy efficiency for ships according to regulation 21 of MARPOL Annex VI during phase 0 and phase 1 (i.e. for those ship types as in table 1 of appendix with a size of equal or more than 20,000 DWT).

3 Assessment procedure

3.1 The assessment can be carried out at two different levels as listed below:

.1 minimum power lines assessment; and

.2 simplified assessment.

3.2 The ship should be considered to have sufficient power to maintain the manoeuvrability in adverse conditions if it fulfils one of these assessment levels.

4 Assessment level 1 – minimum power lines assessment

4.1 If the ship under consideration has installed power not less than the power defined by the minimum power line for the specific ship type, the ship should be considered to have sufficient power to maintain manoeuvrability in adverse conditions.

4.2 The minimum power lines for the different types of ships are provided in the appendix.

5 Assessment level 2 – simplified assessment

5.1 The methodology for the simplified assessment is provided in the appendix.

5.2 If the ship under consideration fulfils the requirements as defined in the simplified assessment, the ship should be considered to have sufficient power to maintain manoeuvrability in adverse conditions.

6 Documentation

Test documentation should include at least, but not be limited to, a:

.1 description of the ship's main particulars;

.2 description of the ship's relevant manoeuvring and propulsion systems;

.3 description of the assessment level used and results; and

.4 description of the test method(s) used with references, if applicable.

APPENDIX

ASSESSMENT PROCEDURES TO MAINTAIN THE MANOEUVRABILITY UNDER ADVERSE CONDITIONS, APPLICABLE DURING PHASE 0 AND PHASE 1 OF THE EEDI IMPLEMENTATION

1 Scope

1.1 The procedures as described below are applicable during phase 0 and phase 1 of the EEDI implementation as defined in regulation 21 of MARPOL Annex VI (see also paragraph 0 – Purpose of these interim guidelines).

2 Minimum power lines

2.1 The minimum power line values of total installed MCR, in kW, for different types of ships should be calculated as follows:

Minimum Power Line Value = $a \times (DWT) + b$

where:

DWT is the deadweight of the ship in metric tons; and
a and *b* are the parameters given in table 1 for tankers, bulk carriers and combination carriers.

Table 1: Parameters a and b for determination of the minimum power line values for the different ship types

Ship type	a	b
Bulk carrier which DWT is less than 145,000	0.0763	3374.3
Bulk carrier which DWT is 145,000 and over	0.0490	7329.0
Tanker	0.0652	5960.2
Combination carrier	see tanker above	

2.2 The total installed MCR of all main propulsion engines should not be less than the minimum power line value, where MCR is the value specified on the EIAPP Certificate.

3 Simplified assessment

3.1 The simplified assessment procedure is based on the principle that, if the ship has sufficient installed power to move with a certain advance speed in head waves and wind, the ship will also be able to keep course in waves and wind from any other direction. The minimum ship speed of advance in head waves and wind is thus selected depending on ship design, in such a way that the fulfilment of the ship speed of advance requirements means fulfilment of course-keeping requirements. For example, ships with larger rudder areas will be able to keep course even if the engine is less powerful; similarly, ships with a larger lateral windage area will require more power to keep course than ships with a smaller windage area.

3.2 The simplification in this procedure is that only the equation of steady motion in longitudinal direction is considered; the requirements of course-keeping in wind and waves are taken into account indirectly by adjusting the required ship speed of advance in head wind and waves.

3.3 The assessment procedure consists of two steps:

.1 definition of the required advance speed in head wind and waves, ensuring course-keeping in all wave and wind directions; and

.2 assessment whether the installed power is sufficient to achieve the required advance speed in head wind and waves.

Definition of required ship speed of advance

3.4 The required ship advance speed through the water in head wind and waves, V_s, is set to the larger of:

.1 minimum navigational speed, V_{nav}; or

.2 minimum course-keeping speed, V_{ck}.

3.5 The minimum navigational speed, V_{nav}, facilitates leaving coastal area within a sufficient time before the storm escalates, to reduce navigational risk and risk of excessive motions in waves due to unfavourable heading with respect to wind and waves. The minimum navigational speed is set to 4.0 knots.

3.6 The minimum course-keeping speed in the simplified assessment, $V_{ck,}$ is selected to facilitate course-keeping of the ships in waves and wind from all directions. This speed is defined on the basis of the reference course-keeping speed $V_{ck,\ ref}$, related to ships with the rudder area A_R equal to 0.9% of the submerged lateral area corrected for breadth effect, and an adjustment factor taking into account the actual rudder area:

$$V_{ck} = V_{ck,\ ref} - 10.0 \times (A_{R\%} - 0.9) \quad (1)$$

where V_{ck} in knots, is the minimum course-keeping speed, $V_{ck,\ ref}$ in knots, is the reference course-keeping speed, and $A_{R\%}$ is the actual rudder area, A_R, as percentage of the submerged lateral area of the ship corrected for breadth effect, $A_{LS,\ cor}$, calculated as $A_{R\%} = A_R/A_{LS,\ cor} \cdot 100\%$. The submerged lateral area corrected for breadth effect is calculated as $A_{LS,\ cor} = L_{pp}T_m(1.0+25.0(B_{wl}/L_{pp})^2)$, where L_{pp} is the length between perpendiculars in m, B_{wl} is the water line breadth in m and T_m is the draft a midship in m. In case of high-lift rudders or other alternative steering devices, the equivalent rudder area to the conventional rudder area is to be used.

3.7 The reference course-keeping speed $V_{ck,\ ref}$ for bulk carriers, tankers and combination carriers is defined, depending on the ratio A_{FW}/A_{LW} of the frontal windage area, A_{FW}, to the lateral windage area, A_{LW}, as follows:

.1 9.0 knots for $A_{FW}/A_{LW} = 0.1$ and below and 4.0 knots for $A_{FW}/A_{LW} = 0.40$ and above; and

.2 linearly interpolated between 0.1 and 0.4 for intermediate values of A_{FW}/A_{LW}.

Procedure of assessment of installed power

3.8 The assessment is to be performed in maximum draught conditions at the required ship speed of advance, V_s, defined above. The principle of the assessment is that the required propeller thrust, T in N, defined from the sum of bare hull resistance in calm water R_{cw}, resistance due to appendages R_{app}, aerodynamic resistance R_{air}, and added resistance in

waves R_{aw}, can be provided by the ship's propulsion system, taking into account the thrust deduction factor t:

$$T = (R_{cw} + R_{air} + R_{aw} + R_{app})/(1-t) \quad (2)$$

3.9 The calm-water resistance for bulk carriers, tankers and combination carriers can be calculated neglecting the wave-making resistance as $R_{cw} = (1+k)C_F \frac{1}{2}\rho S V_s^2$, where k is the form factor, $C_F = \frac{0.075}{(\log_{10}\mathrm{Re}-2)^2}$ is the frictional resistance coefficient, $\mathrm{Re} = V_s L_{pp}/\nu$ is the Reynolds number, ρ is water density in kg/m^3, S is the wetted area of the bare hull in m^2, V_s is the ship advance speed in m/s, and ν is the kinematic viscosity of water in m^2/s.

3.10 The form factor k should be obtained from model tests. Where model tests are not available the empirical formula below may be used:

$$k = -0.095 + 25.6\frac{C_B}{(L_{pp}/B_{wl})^2\sqrt{B_{wl}/T_m}} \quad (3)$$

where C_B is the block coefficient based on L_{pp}.

3.11 Aerodynamic resistance can be calculated as $R_{air} = C_{air}\frac{1}{2}\rho_a A_F V_{w,rel}^2$, where C_{air} is the aerodynamic resistance coefficient, ρ_a is the density of air in kg/m^3, A_F is the frontal windage area of the hull and superstructure in m^2, and $V_{w\,rel}$ is the relative wind speed in m/s, defined by the adverse conditions in paragraph 1.1 of the interim guidelines, V_w, added to the ship advance speed, V_s. The coefficient C_{air} can be obtained from model tests or empirical data. If none of the above is available, the value 1.0 is to be assumed.

3.12 The added resistance in waves, R_{aw}, defined by the adverse conditions and wave spectrum in paragraph 1 of the interim guidelines, is calculated as:

$$R_{aw} = 2\int_0^\infty \frac{R_{aw}(V_s,\omega)}{\zeta_a^2} S_{\zeta\zeta}(\omega)\,d\omega \quad (4)$$

where $R_{aw}(V_s,\omega)/\zeta_a^2$ is the quadratic transfer function of the added resistance, depending on the advance speed V_s in m/s, wave frequency ω *in rad/s*, the wave amplitude, ζ_a *in m* and the wave spectrum, $S_{\zeta\zeta}$ *in m^{2}s*. The quadratic transfer function of the added resistance can be obtained from the added resistance test in regular waves at the required ship advance speed V_s as per ITTC procedures 7.5-02 07-02.1 and 7.5-02 07-02.2, or from equivalent method verified by the Administration.

3.13 The thrust deduction factor t can be obtained either from model tests or empirical formula. Default conservative estimate is $t = 0.7w$, where w is the wake fraction. Wake fraction w can be obtained from model tests or empirical formula; default conservative estimates are given in table 2.

Table 2: Recommended values for wake fraction *w*

Block coefficient	One propeller	Two propellers
0.5	0.14	0.15
0.6	0.23	0.17
0.7	0.29	0.19
0.8 and above	0.35	0.23

3.14 The required advance coefficient of the propeller is found from the equation:

$$T = \rho u_a^2 D_P^2 K_T(J)/J^2 \quad (5)$$

where D_P is the propeller diameter, $K_T(J)$ is the open water propeller thrust coefficient, $J = u_a/nD_P$, and $u_a = V_s(1-w)$. J can be found from the curve of K_T (J)/J^2.

3.15 The required rotation rate of the propeller, *n*, in revolutions per second, is found from the relation:

$$n = u_a/(JD_P) \quad (6)$$

3.16 The required delivered power to the propeller at this rotation rate *n*, P_D in watt, is then defined from the relation:

$$P_D = 2\pi\rho n^3 D_P^5 K_Q(J) \quad (7)$$

where $K_Q(J)$ is the open water propeller torque coefficient curve. Relative rotative efficiency is assumed to be close to 1.0.

3.17 For diesel engines, the available power is limited because of the torque-speed limitation of the engine, $Q \le Q_{max}(n)$, where $Q_{max}(n)$ is the maximum torque that the engine can deliver at the given propeller rotation rate *n*. Therefore, the required minimum installed MCR is calculated taking into account:

.1 torque-speed limitation curve of the engine which is specified by the engine manufacturer; and

.2 transmission efficiency η_s which is to be assumed 0.98 for aft engine and 0.97 for midship engine, unless exact measurements are available.

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION

E

4 ALBERT EMBANKMENT
LONDON SE1 7SR
Telephone: +44 (0)20 7735 7611 Fax: +44 (0)20 7587 3210

MSC-MEPC.5/Circ.10
23 June 2015

UNIFIED INTERPRETATION OF PARAGRAPH 15.13.5 OF THE IBC CODE FOR PRODUCTS REQUIRING OXYGEN-DEPENDENT INHIBITORS

1 The Maritime Safety Committee, at its ninety-fifth session (3 to 12 June 2015), and the Marine Environment Protection Committee, at its sixty-eighth session (11 to 15 May 2015), approved a unified interpretation of paragraph 15.13.5 of the IBC Code for products requiring oxygen-dependent inhibitors, prepared by the Sub-Committee on Pollution Prevention and Response, at its second session (19 to 23 January 2015), as set out in the annex.

2 Member Governments are invited to use the annexed unified interpretation as guidance when applying the relevant requirements of the IBC Code and to bring it to the attention of all parties concerned.

***

ANNEX

UNIFIED INTERPRETATION OF PARAGRAPH 15.13.5 OF THE IBC CODE FOR PRODUCTS REQUIRING OXYGEN-DEPENDENT INHIBITORS

IBC Code, paragraph 15.13.5[1] – When a product containing an oxygen-dependent inhibitor is to be carried

When a product containing an oxygen-dependent inhibitor is carried on a ship for which inerting is required under SOLAS chapter II-2, the inert gas system shall be operated as required to maintain the oxygen level in the vapour space of the tank at or above the minimum level of oxygen required under paragraph 15.13 of the IBC Code and as specified in the Certificate of Protection.

---

[1] Expected entry into force: 1 January 2016.

INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION

E

4 ALBERT EMBANKMENT
LONDON SE1 7SR
Telephone: +44 (0)20 7735 7611 Fax: +44 (0)20 7587 3210

Circular Letter No.3551
8 June 2015

To: All IMO Members
Parties to the MARPOL Convention which are not Members of IMO

Subject: **Amendments to MARPOL and the NO_X Technical Code 2008**

1 MEPC 68 (11 to 15 May 2015) considered and approved the following draft amendments with a view to adoption at MEPC 69 (18 to 22 April 2016):

.1 draft amendments to MARPOL Annex II (Revised GESAMP Hazard Evaluation Procedure);

.2 draft amendments to MARPOL Annex VI (Record requirements for operational compliance with NO_X Tier III emission control areas); and

.3 draft amendments to the NO_X Technical Code 2008 (Testing of gas-fuelled and dual fuel engines for NO_X Tier III strategy).

2 The Secretary-General has the honour to transmit herewith, in accordance with article 16(2)(a) of the MARPOL Convention, the text of the draft amendments referred to above, given in the annexes, with a view to their consideration for adoption at MEPC 69 in accordance with article 16(2)(b), (c) and (d) of the said Convention.

***

ANNEX 1

DRAFT AMENDMENTS TO MARPOL ANNEX II
(Revised GESAMP Hazard Evaluation Procedure)

ANNEX II

REGULATIONS FOR THE CONTROL OF POLLUTION OF NOXIOUS LIQUID SUBSTANCES IN BULK

Appendices to Annex II

Guidelines for the categorization of noxious liquid substances

The tables under the title "Abbreviated legend to the revised GESAMP Hazard Evaluation Procedure" are replaced with the following:

The Revised GESAMP hazard evaluation procedure

Columns A and B Aquatic environment					
	A Bioaccumulation and Biodegradation			B Aquatic Toxicity	
Numerical Rating	A1 Bioaccumulation		A2 Biodegradation	B1 Acute Toxicity LC/EC/IC50 (mg/l)	B2 Chronic Toxicity NOEC (mg/l)
	log Pow	BCF			
0	<1 or > ca.7	no measurable BCF	R: readily biodegradable	>1000	>1
1	≥1 – <2	≥1 – <10	NR: not readily biodegradable	>100 – ≤1000	>0.1 – ≤1
2	≥2 – <3	≥10 – <100		>10 – ≤100	>0.01 – ≤0.1
3	≥3 – <4	≥100 – <500		>1 – ≤10	>0.001 – ≤0.01
4	≥4 – <5	≥500 – <4000		>0.1 – ≤1	≤0.001
5	≥5 – < ca.7	>4000		>0.01 – ≤0.1	
6				≤0.01	

Columns C and D Human health (toxic effects to mammals)						
	C Acute Mammalian Toxicity			D Irritation, Corrosion and Long-term health effects		
Numerical Rating	C1 Oral Toxicity LD_{50}/ATE (mg/kg)	C2 Dermal Toxicity LD_{50}/ATE (mg/kg)	C3 Inhalation Toxicity LC_{50}/ATE (mg/l)	D1 Skin irritation and corrosion	D2 Eye irritation and corrosion	D3 Long-term health effects
0	>2000	>2000	>20	not irritating	not irritating	C – Carcinogenic M – Mutagenic R – Reprotoxic Ss – Sensitizing to skin Sr – Sensitizing to respiratory system A – Aspiration hazard T – Target Organ Toxicity N – Neurotoxic I – Immunotoxic
1	>300 – ≤2000	>1000 – ≤2000	>10 – ≤20	mildly irritating	mildly irritating	
2	>50 – ≤300	>200 – ≤1000	>2 – ≤10	irritating	irritating	
3	>5 – ≤50	>50 – ≤200	>0.5 – ≤2	severely irritating or corrosive **3A** Corr. (≤4 h) **3B** Corr. (≤1 h) **3C** Corr. (≤3 min)	severely irritating	
4	≤5	≤50	≤0.5			

Column E Interference with other uses of the sea			
E1 Tainting*	E2 Physical effects on wildlife and benthic habitats	E3 Numerical rating	E3 Interference with Coastal Amenities
NT: not tainting (tested)	**Fp:** Persistent Floater	0	no interference ***no warning***
T: tainting test positive	**F:** Floater	1	slightly objectionable ***warning, no closure of amenity***
	S: Sinking Substances	2	moderately objectionable ***possible closure of amenity***
		3	highly objectionable ***closure of amenity***

* Tainting has been deleted as a regulatory criterion for classifying substances. Substances that have already been rated on this basis continue to be listed in sub-column E1 in the GESAMP Composite List.

***

ANNEX 2

**DRAFT AMENDMENTS TO MARPOL ANNEX VI
(Record requirements for operational compliance with
NO_X Tier III emission control areas)**

Regulation 13 – Nitrogen oxides (NO_x)

A new paragraph 5.3 is added after existing paragraph 5.2, as follows:

"5.3 The tier and on/off status of marine diesel engines installed onboard a ship to which paragraph 5.1 of this regulation applies which are certified to both Tier II and Tier III or which are certified to Tier II only shall be recorded in such logbook as prescribed by the Administration at entry into and exit from an emission control area designated under paragraph 6 of this regulation, or when the on/off status changes within such an area, together with the date, time and position of the ship."

***

ANNEX 3

**DRAFT AMENDMENTS TO THE NO_X TECHNICAL CODE 2008
(Testing of gas-fuelled and dual fuel engines for NO_X Tier III strategy)**

Abbreviations, subscripts and symbols

1 In subparagraphs .1 and .2 and in the title of table 2, the word "marine" is added before the word "diesel".

2 In table 2, row 4 is replaced with the following:

"

(H)FID	(Heated) flame ionization detector

"

Chapter 1 – General

3 In paragraph 1.3.10, the following new sentence is inserted after the first sentence:

"In addition, a gas-fuelled engine installed on a ship constructed on or after 1 March 2016 or a gas-fuelled additional or non-identical replacement engine installed on or after that date is also considered as a marine diesel engine."

Chapter 4 – Approval for serially manufactured engines: engine family and engine group concepts

4 In paragraph 4.3.8.2.6, after the existing bullet point "– dual fuel", a new bullet point is added as follows:

"– gas fuel"

5 After existing paragraph 4.3.8.2.10, a new paragraph 4.3.8.2.11 is added as follows:

".11 ignition methods:
– compression ignition
– ignition by pilot injection
– ignition by spark plug or other external ignition device"

6 In paragraph 4.4.6.2.5, after the words "injection cam", the words "or gas valve" are inserted.

7 In the first and second bullet points under paragraph 4.4.7.2.1, after the word "injection", the words "or ignition" are inserted, respectively.

8 In paragraph 4.4.7.2.2, after the existing bullet point "– combustion chamber", a new bullet point is added as follows:

"– gas valve specification."

Chapter 5 – Procedures for NO_x emission measurements on a test bed

9 In paragraph 5.2.1.2, after the word "engines", the words "operating on liquid or dual fuel" are inserted.

10 The existing paragraph 5.2.1.3 is renumbered as 5.2.1.3.1 and in the renumbered paragraph 5.2.1.3.1, after the word "engines", the words "operating on liquid or dual fuel" are inserted.

11 A new paragraph 5.2.1.3.2 is added after the renumbered paragraph 5.2.1.3.1 as follows:

"5.2.1.3.2 For engines to be tested with gas fuel only with or without cooling of the intake air the parameter f_a shall be determined according to the following:

$$f_a = \left(\frac{99}{p_s}\right)^{1.2} \cdot \left(\frac{T_a}{298}\right)^{0.6} \qquad (2a)"$$

12 In the second sentence of paragraph 5.3.3, the words "fuel injection pump" are replaced with the word "engine".

13 In the first sentence of paragraph 5.3.4, the words "for dual fuel" are deleted.

14 In the second sentence of paragraph 5.4.2, before the word "diesel", the word "marine" is inserted.

15 A new paragraph 5.12.3.2.3 is added as follows:

".3 The calculation shall be in accordance with paragraphs 5.12.3.1 to 5.12.3.2. However, q_{mf}, w_{ALF}, w_{BET}, w_{DEL}, w_{EPS}, f_{fw} values shall be calculated in accordance with the following table:

Factors in the formula (6) (7) (8)		**Formula for factors**
q_{mf}	=	$q_{mf\_G} + q_{mf\_L}$
w_{ALF}	=	$\frac{q_{mf\_G} \times w_{ALF\_G} + q_{mf\_L} \times w_{ALF\_L}}{q_{mf\_G} + q_{mf\_L}}$
w_{BET}	=	$\frac{q_{mf\_G} \times w_{BET\_G} + q_{mf\_L} \times w_{BET\_L}}{q_{mf\_G} + q_{mf\_L}}$
w_{DEL}	=	$\frac{q_{mf\_G} \times w_{DEL\_G} + q_{mf\_L} \times w_{DEL\_L}}{q_{mf\_G} + q_{mf\_L}}$
w_{EPS}	=	$\frac{q_{mf\_G} \times w_{EPS\_G} + q_{mf\_L} \times w_{EPS\_L}}{q_{mf\_G} + q_{mf\_L}}$

"

16 Paragraph 5.12.3.3 is replaced with the following:

"5.12.3.3 For the intake air:

$$k_{wa} = 1 - k_{w2} \quad (15)"$$

17 Paragraph 5.12.4.1 is replaced with the following:

"5.12.4.1 As the NO_X emission depends on ambient air conditions, the NO_X concentration shall be corrected for ambient air temperature and humidity with the factors in accordance with 5.12.4.5, 5.12.4.6 or 5.12.4.7 as applicable."

18 In paragraph 5.12.4.6, the last sentence is replaced with the following:

"However if $H_a \geq H_{SC}$, then H_{SC} shall be used in place of H_a in formula (17) or (17a)."

19 A new paragraph 5.12.4.7 is added after existing paragraph 5.12.4.6 as follows:

"5.12.4.7 For engines to be tested with gas fuel only:

$$k_{\mathrm{hd}} = 0.6272 + 44.030 \times 10^{-3} \times H_{\mathrm{a}} - 0.862 \times 10^{-3} \times {H_{\mathrm{a}}}^2 \quad (17a)$$

where:

H_a is the humidity of the intake air at the inlet to the air filter in g water per kg dry air."

Chapter 6 – Procedures for demonstrating compliance with NO_X emission limits on board

20 In the first sentence of paragraph 6.2.1.2, before the word "diesel", the word "marine" is inserted.

21 Subparagraph 6.2.2.3.1 is replaced with the following:

".1 injection or ignition timing,"

22 In subparagraph 6.2.2.3.14, the word "or" is deleted.

23 At the end of subparagraph 6.2.2.3.15, the word "or" is added.

24 A new subparagraph 6.2.2.3.16 is added as follows:

".16 gas valve."

25 In the third sentence of paragraph 6.3.1.4[1], the word "dual" is replaced with the word "gas".

26 The footnote of table 6[1] is replaced with the following:

"* Only for engines to be tested with gas fuel."

27 Paragraph 6.3.4.1 is replaced with the following:

"6.3.4.1 Generally all emission measurements with liquid fuel shall be carried out with the engine running on marine diesel fuel oil of an ISO 8217:2005, DM grade. Generally all emission measurements with gas fuel shall be carried out with the engine running on gas fuel equivalent to ISO 8178-5:2008."

28 In paragraph 6.3.4.3[1], before the word "engine", the word "or gas-fuelled" are inserted.

Appendix III – Specifications for analysers to be used in the determination of gaseous components of marine diesel engine emissions

29 Subparagraph 1.2.12 is replaced with the following:

".12 O_2 – Oxygen analyser

Paramagnetic detector (PMD), zirconium dioxide (ZRDO) or electrochemical sensor (ECS). ZRDO shall not be used for dual fuel or gas-fuelled engines."

30 At the end of paragraph 3.3, a new sentence is added as follows:

"Optionally, for gas-fuelled engines (without liquid pilot injection), the hydrocarbon analyser may be of the non-heated flame ionization detector (FID) type."

31 At the end of paragraph 3.5, a new sentence is added as follows:

"ZRDO shall not be used for dual fuel or gas-fuelled engines."

Appendix IV – Calibration of the analytical and measurement instruments

32 In paragraphs 5.3, 5.4.2, 8, 8.1.1, 8.2.2 and 8.3.2.10, the symbol "FID" is replaced with the symbol "(H)FID", respectively.

Appendix V – Parent engine test report and test data

Section 1 – Parent engine test report

33 Rows 10, 11 and 12 of sheet 1/5 are replaced with the following:

"

Static injection or ignition timing		deg CA BTDC
Electronic injection or ignition control	No:	Yes:
Variable injection or ignition control	No:	Yes:

"

34 Rows 6 and 27 of sheet 2/5 are replaced, respectively, and a new row is inserted after row 6 as follows:

"

Fuel type to be used on board	Distillate/distillate or heavy fuel/dual fuel or gas fuel
Ignition methods	Compression ignition / ignition by pilot injection / ignition by spark plug or other external ignition device

Injection or ignition timing (range)					

"

35 The title of the table under sheet 3/5 is replaced with the following:

"Liquid fuel characteristics"

36 A new table is added below the table of fuel characteristics under sheet 3/5 as follows:

"**Gas fuel characteristics**

Fuel type				
Fuel properties			Fuel elemental analysis	
Methane number	prEN16726: 2014	/	Carbon	% m/m
Lower heating value		MJ/kg	Hydrogen	% m/m
Boiling point		°C	Nitrogen	% m/m
Density at boiling point		kg/m³	Oxygen	% m/m
Pressure at boiling point		bar (abs)	Sulphur	% m/m
			Methane, CH_4	mol%
			Ethane, C_2H_6	mol%
			Propane, C_3H_8	mol%
			Isobutane, i C_4H_{10}	mol%
			N-Butane, n C_4H_{10}	mol%
			Pentane, C_5H_{12}	mol%
			C6+	mol%
			CO_2	mol%

"

37 Row 11 of sheet 5/5 is replaced and a footnote is added as follows:

"

Fuel rack/gas admission duration** mm/sec										

** Only for engines to be tested with gas fuel."

Section 2 – Parent engine test data to be included in the technical file

38 Row 9 is replaced, new rows are inserted after row 15 and a footnote is added as follows:

"

ISO 8217: 2005 grade (DM or RM), ISO 8178-5:2008 (natural gas)		
Carbon	% m/m	
Hydrogen	% m/m	
Sulphur	% m/m	
Nitrogen	% m/m	
Oxygen	% m/m	
Water	% V/V	
Methane, CH_4**	mol%	
Ethane, C_2H_6**	mol%	
Propane, C_3H_8**	mol%	
Isobutane, i C_4H_{10}**	mol%	
N-Butane, n C_4H_{10}**	mol%	
Pentane, C_5H_{12}**	mol%	
C6+**	mol%	
CO_2**	mol%	

** Only for engines to be tested with gas fuel."

Appendix VI – Calculation of exhaust gas mass flow (carbon balance method)

39 In paragraph 2.5, the words "in case of gas mode operation of dual-fuel engine," are deleted.

Appendix VII – Checklist for an engine parameter check method

40 The chapeau of paragraph 1.1 is replaced with the following:

".1 parameter 'injection timing and ignition timing': "

41 At the end of subparagraph 1.1.4, the word "and" is added.

42 A new subparagraph 1.1.5 is added as follows:

".5 timing indicator or timing light."

Appendix VIII – Implementation of the direct measurement and monitoring method

43 At the end of paragraph 2.1.1.4, a new sentence added as follows:

"Optionally, for gas-fuelled engines (without liquid pilot injection), the hydrocarbon analyser may be of the non-heated flame ionization detector (FID) type."

44 At the end of paragraph 2.1.1.5, a new sentence is added as follows:

"ZRDO shall not be used for dual fuel or gas-fuelled engines."